



Skill India
कौशल भारत - कुशल भारत



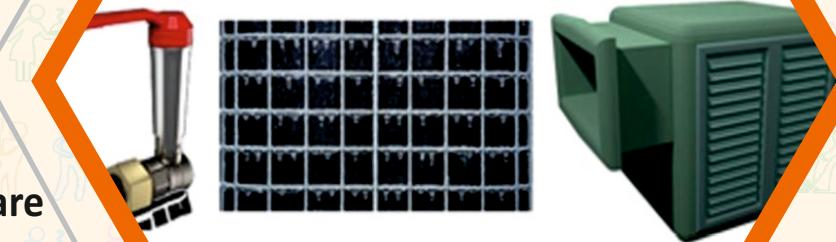
Participant Handbook



Skill India
कौशल भारत - कुशल भारत



**Sector
Electronics**



**Sub - Sector
Consumer Electronics & IT Hardware**

**Occupation
After sales support**

Reference ID : **ELE/Q3112, Version 2.0**
NSQF Level 4



Address: 155, 2nd Floor, ESC House, Okhla Industrial Area,
Phase 3, New Delhi- 110020, India
Email: info@essc-india.org
Web: www.essc-india.org
Phone: +91 8447738501

Price: ₹

HVAC Technician

Published by

Electronics Sector Skills Council of India (ESSCI)

155, 2nd Floor, ESC House, Okhla Industrial Area, Phase 3, New Delhi - 110020, India

Email : info@essc-india.org

Website: www.essc-india.org

Phone: +91 11 46035050, +91 8447738501

All Rights Reserved ©2022

First Edition, July 2022

Copyright ©2022

Electronics Sector Skills Council of India (ESSCI)

155, 2nd Floor, ESC House, Okhla Industrial Area, Phase 3, New Delhi - 110020, India

Email : info@essc-india.org

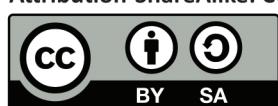
Website: www.essc-india.org

Phone: +91 11 46035050, +91 8447738501

This book is sponsored by Electronics Sector Skills Council of India (ESSCI)

Under Creative Commons Licence: CC-BY-SA

Attribution-ShareAlike: CC BY-SA



This license lets others remix, tweak, and build upon your work even for commercial purposes, as long as they credit you and license their new creations under the identical terms. This license is often compared to "copyleft" free and open-source software licenses. All new works based on yours will carry the same license, so any derivatives will also allow commercial use. This is the license used by Wikipedia and is recommended for materials that would benefit from incorporating content from Wikipedia and similarly licensed projects.

Disclaimer

The information contained here in has been obtained from sources reliable to ESSCI. ESSCI disclaims all warranties to the accuracy, completeness or adequacy of such information. ESSCI shall have no liability for errors, omissions, or inadequacies, in the information contained herein, or for interpretations thereof. Every effort has been made to trace the owners of the copyright material included in the book. The publishers would be grateful for any omissions brought to their notice for acknowledgements in future editions of the book. No entity in ESSCI shall be responsible for any loss whatsoever, sustained by any person who relies on this material. The material in this publication is copyrighted. No parts of this publication may be reproduced, stored or distributed in any form or by any means either on paper or electronic media, unless authorized by the ESSCI.





“ Skilling is building a better India.
If we have to move India towards
development then Skill Development
should be our mission. ”

Shri Narendra Modi

Prime Minister of India



Skill India
जैविक शक्ति - जैविक विकास



Skilling India in Electronics



National Skill Development Corporation

Transforming the skill landscape

Certificate

COMPLIANCE TO

QUALIFICATION PACK - NATIONAL OCCUPATIONAL STANDARDS

is hereby issued by the

ELECTRONICS SECTOR SKILLS COUNCIL OF INDIA

for

PARTICIPANT HANDBOOK

Complying to National Occupational Standards of

Job Role/Qualification Pack: "HVAC Technician (Options: Packaged Type HVAC Ducted System)"

Version1.0, QP No. "ELE/Q3112, NSQF Level 4"

27.01.2022

02.06.2025

Authorized Signatory

Electronics Sector Skill Council of India

Authorised Signatory

(Electronics Sector Skills Council of India)

Date of Issuance : July 1st, 2020

Valid up to* : July 1st, 2023

*Valid up to the next review date date of the Qualification Pack or the

'Valid up to' date mentioned above (whichever is earlier)

Acknowledgements

The need for having a standard curriculum for the Job Role based Qualification Packs under the National Skills Qualification Framework was felt necessary for achieving a uniform skill-based training manual in the form of a participant handbook.

I would like to take the opportunity to thank everyone who contributed in developing this handbook for the HVAC Technician.

The handbook is the result of tireless pursuit to develop an effective tool for imparting the Skill Based training in the most effective manner.

I would like to thank the team of KotentEdge for their support to develop the content, the SME and the team at the ESSCI along with the industry partners for the tireless effort in bringing the handbook in the current format.

About this Book

This Participant Handbook is designed to enable training for the Qualification Pack (QP) of HVAC Technician. The following National Occupational Standard (NOS) are covered across Unit/s:

- ELE/N3101 - Engage with Customer for Service
- ELE/N3140 - Service, troubleshoot, and repair a HVAC system chillers
- ELE/N9905 - Work effectively at the work place
- ELE/N1002 - Apply health and safety practices at the workplace
- ELE/N3141 - (Optional) Service and repair of packaged type HVAC ducted system

Key Learning Objectives for the specific NOS mark the beginning of the Modules & Unit/s for that NOS.

Symbols Used



Key Learning Outcomes



Steps



Exercise



Tips



Notes



Unit Objectives



Activity



Practical

Table of Contents

S. No	Modules and Units	Page No.
1.	Role and Responsibilities of an HVAC Technician (ELE/N3140)	1
	Unit 1.1 – Roles and Responsibilities of an HVAC Technician	3
	Unit 1.2 – Basic Concepts of RAC and HVAC	7
	Unit 1.3 – Basics of Electricity	29
	Unit 1.4 – Tools and Equipment	43
2.	Pre-requisites of Work (ELE/N3101)	55
	Unit 2.1 – Interacting with Supervisor	57
	Unit 2.2 – Interacting with Colleagues	61
	Unit 2.3 – Identify the Possible Solutions and Suggest to Client	65
	Unit 2.4 – Plan Work Schedule	72
	Unit 2.5 – Analyse the Drawings and Layouts	77
3.	Service of an HVAC System (ELE/N3140)	81
	Unit 3.1 – Service and Maintenance of HVAC System	83
	Unit 3.2 – Cleaning Equipment	88
	Unit 3.3 – Check Water Pipelines and Pumps for any Damage	91
	Unit 3.4 – Fix Faults in Electrical Control Panels and Supply Boxes	94
	Unit 3.5 – Prepare Maintenance and Service Records	97
4.	Repair of the System and Performance Check (ELE/N3140)	101
	Unit 4.1 – Complaint Handling	103
	Unit 4.2 – Identify Faulty Parts and Troubleshooting	108
	Unit 4.3 – Evaluating and Repairing Electrical Connections, Earthing and Motor Issues	127
	Unit 4.4 – Achieving Delivery Standards	138
5.	Soft Skills and Work Ethics (ELE/N9905)	143
	Unit 5.1 – Effective Communication and Coordination at Work	145
	Unit 5.2 – Working Effectively and Maintaining Discipline at Work	152
	Unit 5.3 – Maintaining Social Diversity at Work	163
	Exercise	169

6.	Basic Health and Safety Practices (ELE/N1002)	171
	Unit 6.1 – Workplace Hazards	173
	Unit 6.2 – Fire Safety	185
	Unit 6.3 – First Aid	189
	Unit 6.4 – Waste Management	193
	Exercise	196
7.	Service and Repair of Packaged Type HVAC Ducted Systems (ELE/N3141) - Optional	199
	Unit 7.1 – Packaged Air Conditioners	201
	Unit 7.2 – Installation and Repair of HVAC Ducted Systems	209
8.	Employability and Entrepreneurship Skills	219
	Unit 8.1 – Personal Strengths and Value System	223
	Unit 8.2 – Digital Literacy: A Recap	242
	Unit 8.3 – Money Matters	247
	Unit 8.4 – Preparing for Employment and Self-Employment	257
	Unit 8.5 – Understanding Entrepreneurship	267
	Unit 8.6 – Preparing to be an Entrepreneur	288





1. Role and Responsibilities of an HVAC Technician

Unit 1.1 – Roles and Responsibilities of an HVAC Technician

Unit 1.2 – Basic Concepts of RAC and HVAC

Unit 1.3 – Basics of Electricity

Unit 1.4 – Tools and Equipment



Key Learning Outcomes



At the end of this module, you will be able to:

1. Identify the work requirement, roles and responsibilities of an HVAC technician
2. Define the basic concepts of RAC and HVAC
3. Identify basics of electricity, magnetism and motor theory
4. List the tools and equipment used by HVAC technician
5. Classify different types of HVAC systems used
6. Identify the working of various components of an HVAC system

UNIT 1.1: Roles and Responsibilities of an HVAC Technician

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Interpret the working requirements of an HVAC technician
2. Analyse the role and responsibilities of an HVAC technician
3. Identify the career growth path for an HVAN technician

1.1.1 Who is an HVAC technician?

HVAC stands for heating, ventilation and air conditioning. It is a system used to control temperature, humidity, and air quality in indoor. It helps heating or cooling up the building and keeping it warm or cool (as required). It ventilates the dirty/old air out to bring in the fresh air, and giving the building the right amount of air conditioning under any environmental condition. It can be used both in commercial as well as residential buildings.

The HVAC system should be properly install and need timely maintenance and repair. To perform all these operation, we need an HVAC technician.

An HVAC technician's work involves installation, maintenance and repair of the following that controls the temperature and air quality in buildings:

- Heating
- Ventilation
- Air Conditioning
- Refrigeration

In addition, an HVAC technician also performs service; repair and performance check of a packaged type HVAC ducted system at a site.

Thus, as an HVAC technician, you are expected to install, maintain and repair heating, air conditioning and ventilation systems in commercial and industrial areas. You need to engage with the client to understand the work requirement and follows organizational norms to complete the work. Customer's satisfaction, safety and comfort should be among your top priorities. You should possess excellent customer handling and troubleshooting skills I adherence to organisational policy and procedures.

The following figure shows some of the attributes that an HVAC technician must possess:



Fig. 1.1.1: Attributes of an HVAC technician

Patience

Being patient helps an individual to work efficiently when a particular situation is solvable. An individual with patience proves to be:

- Efficient in work, especially in time of crisis.
- Adept in managing clients with high temper.

Integrity

Benefits of possessing integrity stretch to all aspects of an employee's job. An individual with integrity promotes:

- Trusting relationships with clients
- Good interaction with colleagues and supervisors

Punctuality

An individual should be punctual as it helps in:

- Being organized
- Being aware of the timelines
- Planning the day's activities and the complete work plan for each installation

Critical Thinking

An individual must have critical thinking as it helps to:

- Analyse and evaluate the issue in order to form a judgment.
- Take decision wisely.

Good Interpersonal Relationship Building

Good interpersonal relationship building helps an individual to:

- Work as a team member for achieving a smooth workflow and a satisfied customer
- Communicate the constraints and quality requirements to the team
- Build team coordination

1.1.2 Role and Responsibilities

To be successful at workplace, you need to understand your role and responsibilities and be ready to accept workplace challenges. Following are the role and responsibilities of an HVAC technician:

Install, maintain and repair ventilation and air conditioning systems and equipment.

Identify maintenance risks on equipment.

Perform maintenance and service of the HVAC system

Diagnose electrical and mechanical faults for HVAC systems.

Clean, adjust and repair systems, and perform warranty services.

Perform emergency repairs promptly and efficiently.

Troubleshoot and repair HVAC system (chillers)

Use HVAC codes and standards to do technical calculations for optimum performance

Check the performance after service and repair

Keeping daily logs and records of all tasks performed

Comply with appliance standards and with Occupational Health and Safety Act.

Deal with workplace hazards

Follow fire safety practices

Follow emergencies, rescue and first-aid procedures

Comply with service standards, work instructions and customers' requirements.

Resolve customers' queries.

Communicate and manage work effectively at the workplace

Taking measures to enhance own competence

Follow workplace ethics and code of conduct

Interact with the client prior to initiating work

Understand the work requirement

Suggest possible solutions to the client

Achieve productivity and quality as per the company's norms

Fig. 1.1.2: Roles and Responsibilities of an HVAC technician

In addition to the above role and responsibilities, it is expected by an HVAC technician to possess following skills and technical knowledge:

- Knowledge of advanced principles of air conditioning, refrigeration and heating and boiler system
- Proficient in balancing air and water treatment systems in line with HVAC protocols.
- Excellent written, verbal and interpersonal skills.
- Proficient in reading schematics and work plans.
- Ability to work after hours, over weekends and on public holidays with short or no notice.
- Ability to work in confined spaces.

1.1.3 Career Growth Path

Being an HVAC technician is just the first initial step of your professional journey. With experience and upgrading/enhancing your skills, you will keep stepping up. The following figure represents the career growth path for an HVAC technician.

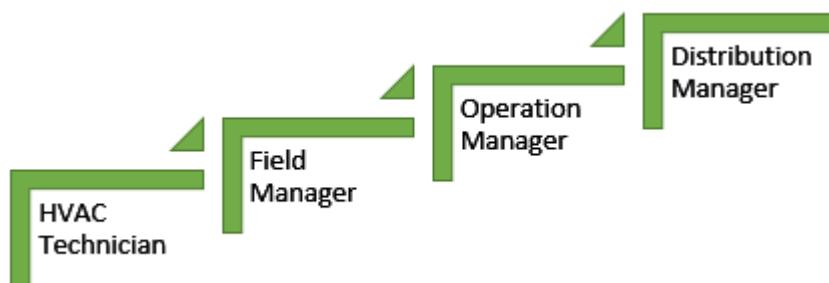


Fig. 1.1.3: Career Growth Path of an HVAC technician

Exercise



1. Who is an HVAC technician?
2. Explain the role and responsibilities of an HVAC technician.

UNIT 1.2: Basic Concepts of RAC and HVAC

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Explain the basic concept of RAC
2. Explain the basic terms used in Refrigeration
3. Explain the basic concept of HVAC
4. Identify the different components of HVAC system
5. Identify the different types of HVAC System

1.2.1 Basic Concept of RAC

RAC stands for Refrigeration and Air Conditioning. Air conditioning is the process of removing heat and moisture from an area to a place outside of the area, which makes the environment comfortable for the occupants. This basically works on the principle of refrigeration.

The basic principle behind the refrigeration process is that when a liquid expands into gas, it extracts heat from its surrounding area. A refrigerant is a chemical liquid which evaporates at a very low temperature enabling it to extract heat at a faster rate. This refrigerant is propelled through a closed system to ensure that it is not dispersed in the surroundings and can be used again and again. The following figure shows the refrigeration cycle:

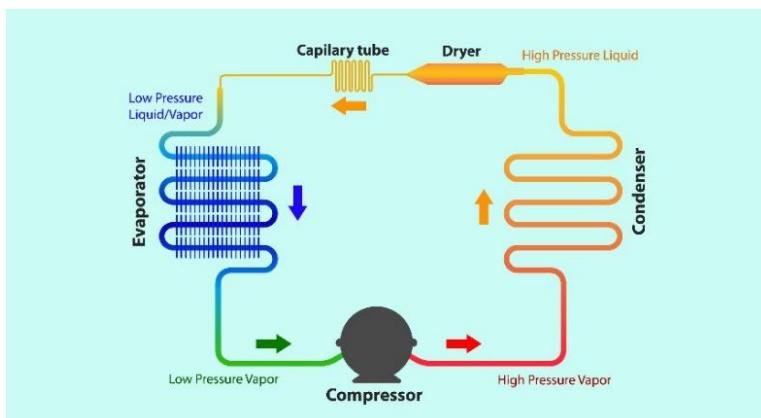


Fig. 1.2.1: Refrigeration cycle

A refrigeration cycle consists of two sides or pressure areas, the evaporating or low pressure side and the condensing or high pressure side. A metering device such as an expansion valve or a capillary tube separates the two areas on one side. On the other side, a compressor is placed between the two areas. The metering device controls the flow of refrigerant and the compressor compresses the refrigerant into high pressure gas. The low-pressure refrigerant passes through the evaporator causing it to evaporate. This low-pressure vapour then enters the compressor where it is compressed into a high temperature, high pressure vapour. It then goes into the condenser where it gives up its heat to the cooler air passing through the condenser. The refrigerant condenses back into high pressure liquid which travels to the metering device. It is made to pass through a small opening resulting in a drop of temperature and pressure. This low-pressure refrigerant then enters the evaporator again, thereby completing the refrigeration cycle.

Terms used in Refrigeration

- **Refrigerant:** Refrigerant is the main working fluid in any refrigeration system and it has a low boiling point. It vaporizes at low temperature and takes the heat away from the substance which has to be refrigerated.
- **Examples:** Freon 12 is used in domestic refrigerators and Freon 22 is used in ACs.
- **Cooling Capacity:** It is the rate at which heat is removed from a cold body or the rate of refrigeration produced.
Unit of capacity of refrigeration is ton. One ton of refrigeration is the quantity of heat removed to freeze one ton of ice at a temperature of 0 °C in a time period of 24 hours.
- **British thermal unit (BTU):** Is defined as the amount of heat which is required to raise the temperature of one pound of water by one-degree Fahrenheit.
- **Cal or Watt:** The amount of energy which is required to raise the temperature of one gram of water by one degree Celsius at constant pressure of one atmosphere.
- **Refrigeration Effect:** It is the quantity of heat removed in unit time or the ratio of quantity of heat removed to the total time taken to remove that heat.

$$\text{Refrigeration effect} = \frac{\text{Heat removed}}{\text{Time taken}}$$

- **Psychometry:** It is the study of the properties of moist air or mixture of air and water vapour.
- **Dry Air:** Dry air is the atmospheric air without the presence of water vapour.
- **Moist Air:** Air which contains water vapour is called as moist air.
- **Humidity:** The amount of water vapour present in air is called as its humidity. Humidity of air depends upon temperature and is independent of pressure.
- **Relative Humidity:** It is the ratio of mass of water vapour present in air to the mass of water vapour in fully saturated air at the same temperature and volume standards.

The air conditioning systems are basically of two types:

- **Window AC:** Window AC basically comprises of a single working unit which can be installed at a window. The condenser and the evaporator work on a single base. The following image shows the basic components of a window AC:

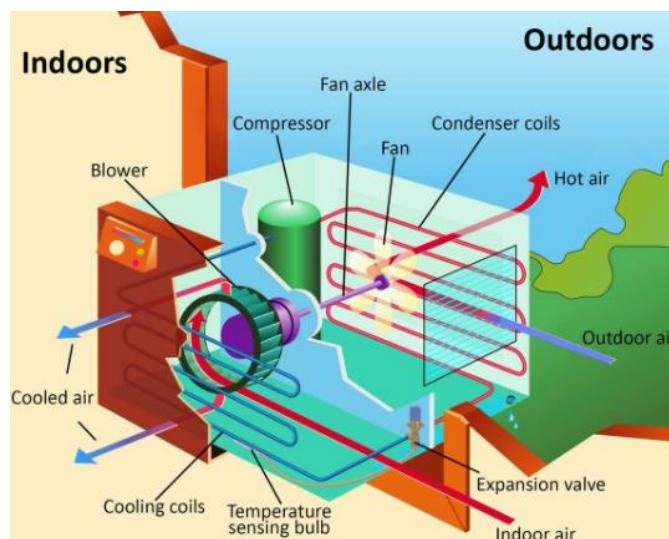


Fig. 1.2.2: Window AC diagram

- **Split AC:** A split AC is basically a two unit set. One is indoor unit (IDU) and the other one is outdoor unit (ODU). The IDU contains the evaporator, the basic air filter and the vents and the ODU contains the condenser coils, the fan motor and other compressor like parts. The following image shows the basic components of a split AC:

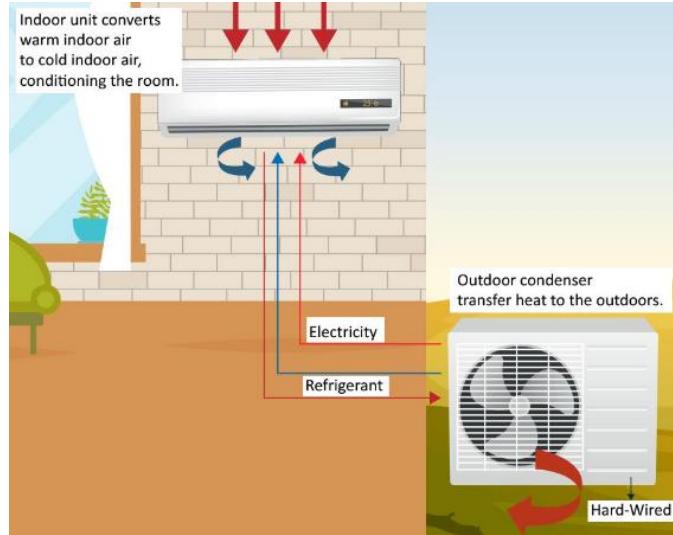


Fig. 1.2.3: Split AC diagram

Basic Wiring of ACs

- **Window AC:** As window AC comprises of only one unit in which all the components are connected, the wiring is done for a single unit. The following image shows the basic wiring diagram of the components of a window AC:

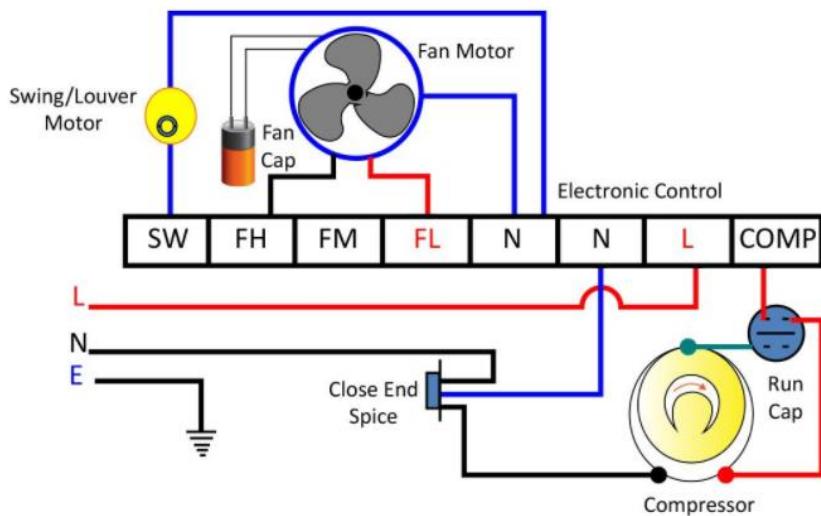


Fig. 1.2.4: Basic wiring of a window AC

- **Split AC:** A split AC contains two units, IDU and ODU. So, both the compartments have their different wiring connections. The following image shows the circuit diagram of both the units of a split AC:

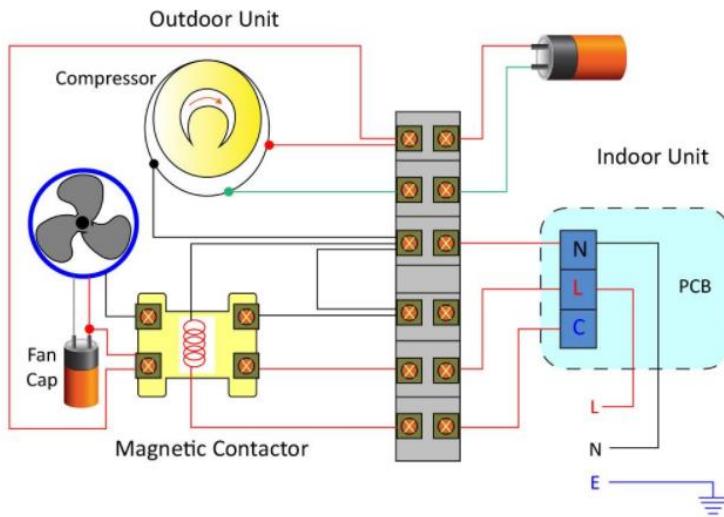


Fig. 1.2.5: Basic wiring of a split AC

The main power supply chord is split into ground wire, live wire and neutral wire. Ground wire is connected to the metal casing of the AC. Live wire is connected to the selector switch to supply power in the compressor, the motor and the other parts of the AC. The live wire from the selector switch is connected to the thermostat switch, then to the compressor of the AC and with the fan motor as well. The neutral wire is connected to the fan motor and the compressor and it goes directly without involving any switch. The connections are done at the backside of the selector switch. All the neutral wires are connected so that they become common to each other; this enables the connection to be connected at the same point.

1.2.2 Basic Concept of HVAC

HVAC is a climate control system for a confined space with respect to the specific requirements of the people, goods or machinery. An HVAC system can be installed in a home, commercial building (shopping malls, warehouses etc...), hotels, vehicles, passages.

Along with maintaining the air temperature (Heating/Cooling) as per the requirement, it also maintains the Indoor Air Quality (IAQ). IAQ refers to the quality of air inside the building. It is related to health and safety measures of the people or the goods placed. Specific gases are used to maintain the IAQ of the building/space where HVAC system is used.

Basic Components of HVAC System

A basic HVAC system consists of following components:

Thermostat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It helps in maintaining the temperature inside the building. The desired temperature is set in advance and when the ambient temperature increases or decreases (beyond the set temperature value), the thermostat triggers the heat exchanger/ evaporator coil-condensing unit to circulate warm/cool air as required.
Furnace	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is the key component of the HVAC system. Its function is to heat a supply of air distributed to various sections of the building. There are four different options available (depending on the model) for heat sources: combustion, heat pump, electric resistance or solar energy.
Heat exchanger	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is placed inside the furnace unit. Its function is to pull cool air, heat it and then circulate the heated air. It starts operation only when the furnace is turned on by the thermostat to improve heating capabilities. (Specifically during winter).
Evaporator Coil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is located in the metal enclosure on the furnace exterior. It operates just opposite to the heat exchanger. Evaporator coil cools the air when the thermostat is set to lower temperature. (Specifically in summer).
Condensing unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is connected to the evaporator coil and is installed outside the building. It is packed with refrigerant gas and linked to the evaporator coil. When the refrigerant cools into a liquid by heat exchange with the outdoor air, the condensing unit sends it to the evaporator coil to vaporize it into gas again.
Refrigerant lines	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> There are the narrow tubes made up of heat and cold resistant metal (copper /aluminium). It is responsible for carrying a refrigerant substance to the condensing unit in the form of a gas, and return it to the evaporator coil in liquid form.
Ductwork	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It refers to the system of ducts that transports air warmed or cooled to the various parts of the building. These ducts are made of light weight metal such as aluminium.
Vents	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> These are rectangular outlets responsible for delivering the air (heated/cooled) from the ducts into every room of the building. They are located on or near the ceiling and directs air downward.

Fig. 1.2.6: Basic Components of HVAC System

A basic HVAC system is an assembly of following units/subsystems:

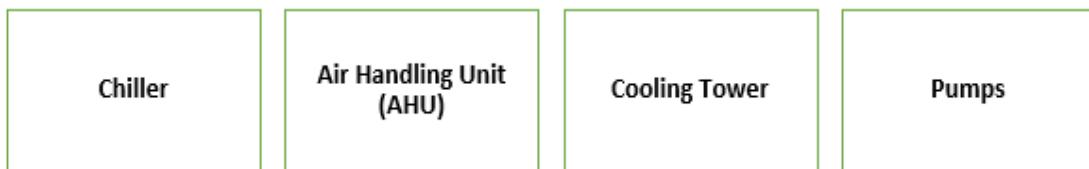


Fig. 1.2.7: Subsystems of an HVAC System

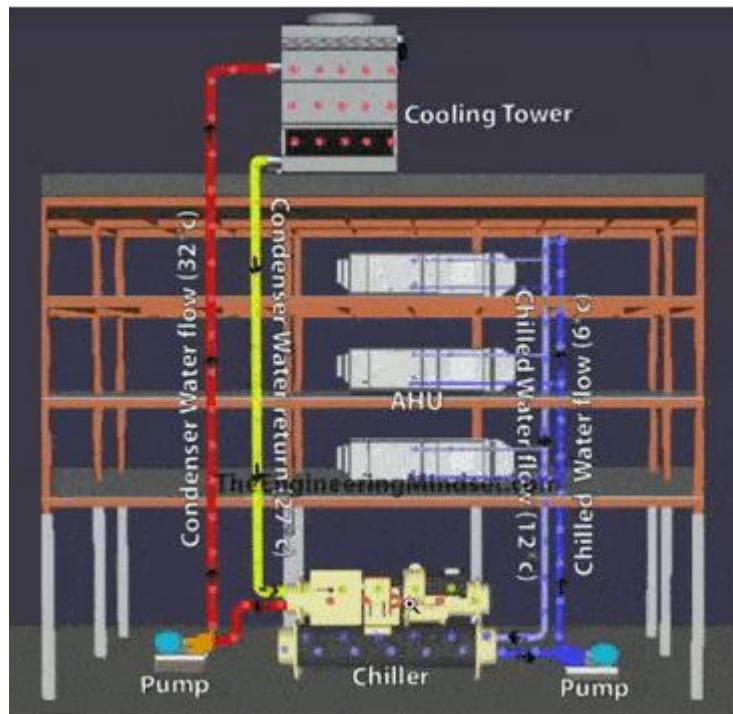


Fig. 1.2.8: HVAC System Assembly

Chiller

The purpose of chiller in an HVAC system is to remove heat through vapour compression or absorption. It is a type of heat exchanger in which, the heat is transferred from secondary refrigerant (water/air) to primary refrigerant (NH_3) to produce chilled water. The essential components of chiller are evaporator, compressor, condenser and expansion valve.

The primary refrigerant (NH_3) absorbs the heat from the secondary refrigerant (Water/air) and changes its (NH_3) phase from liquid to vapour. The chilled water flows into AHU gets warm and return back into chiller

Based on the secondary refrigerant, Chiller can be categories as:

- **Air-Cooled Chiller:** These chillers uses motorized blower to blow the air across the refrigerant line. The purpose is to maintain ambient temperature.

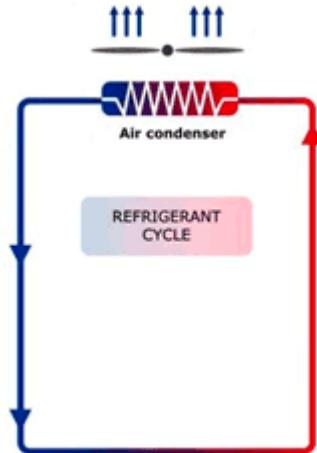


Fig. 1.2.9: Air-Cooled Chiller

- **Water – Cooled Chiller:** The purpose of these chillers is also to maintain the ambient temperature in the building. To solve the purpose, it involves two steps:
 - Move heat from refrigerant vapour into condenser water.
 - Pump the warm condenser water to the cooling tower where the heat is discharged to the atmosphere.

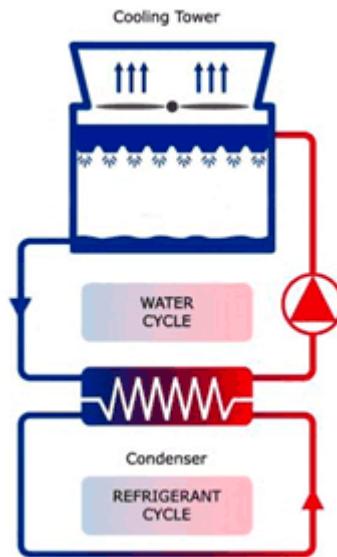


Fig. 1.2.10: Water-Cooled Chiller

Air Handling Unit (AHU)

AHU is basically a large metal box containing ventilators (for supply or exhaust the air), heating coil, cooling coil, air filters, mixing chambers and dampers.

It is used to re-condition and circulate/supply fresh air in the building. It takes in the outside air, re-conditions it and supplies fresh air to the building.

It removes all the exhaust air and creates acceptable quality and temperature of air. The outside air taken in by the AHU is either heated (in winters) by the heating coil or is cooled (in summers) by a cooling unit.

AHU is connected to the ducts that distributes the re-conditioned air in the different sections/zones of the building. The AHUs that are designed for roofs are also known as RTUs (Roof-Top Units).

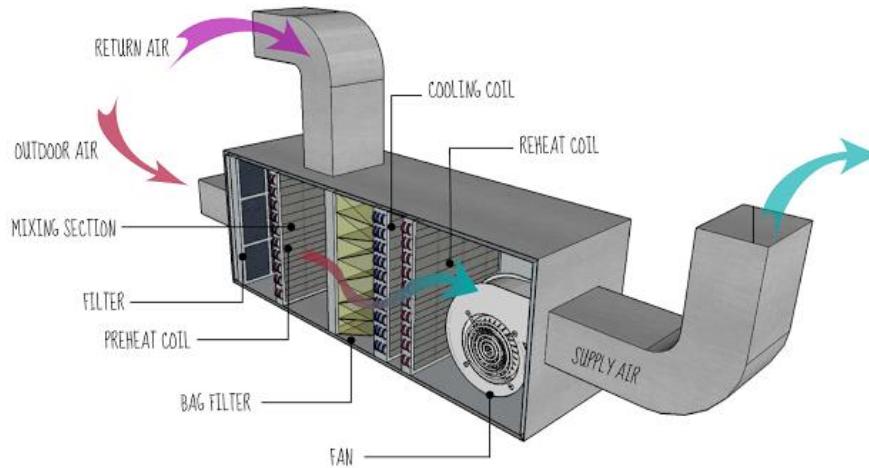


Fig. 1.2.11: Air Handling Unit

Cooling Tower

These are type of heat exchangers used to lower down the temperature of hot water. The warm water flows in the cooling tower, the evaporation process takes place using the large volume of air being blown through the large fans placed inside the tower. When the water cools down, it enters the tower sump placed at the bottom. The cool water is then sent back to cool the initial heat source. It is continuous loop that takes places in the cooling tower and the cycle repeats.

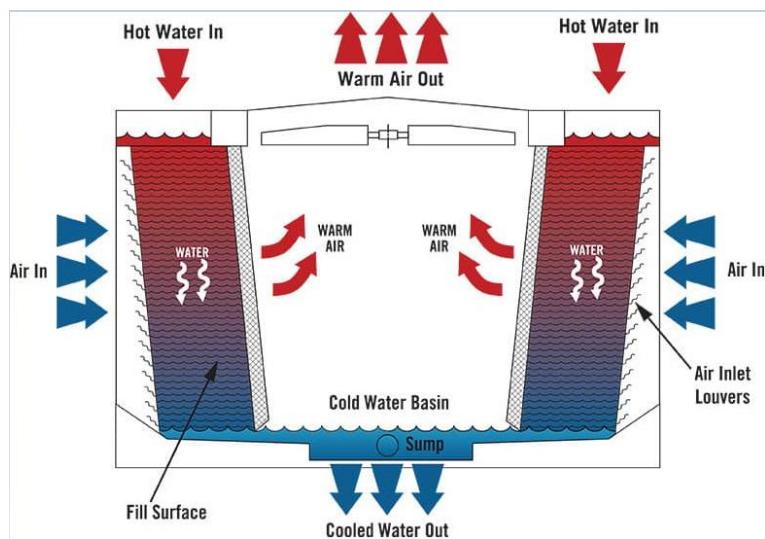


Fig. 1.2.12: Cooling Tower

Note: The functionality of HVAC system is controlled using a software program.

Pumps

Centrifugal pumps are the commonly used pumps in HVAC systems. Its purpose is to create a differential pressure between the inlet water and outlet water of the pump. Due to this pressure differential, the water flows through the pipes.



Fig. 1.2.13: Pump

1.2.3 Condenser

A condenser used in a HVAC system, is a device/unit used to transfer heat from a fluid/liquid into a gas/surrounding air by cooling it. The hot gas which is discharged from the compressor enters the condenser coil and gets condensed. The condensed air is than drained out of the condenser to a recipient located near the bottom.

A condensing unit comprised of condenser coil, compressor and controlling devices. The following schematic diagram represents the condenser unit of an air conditioning system.

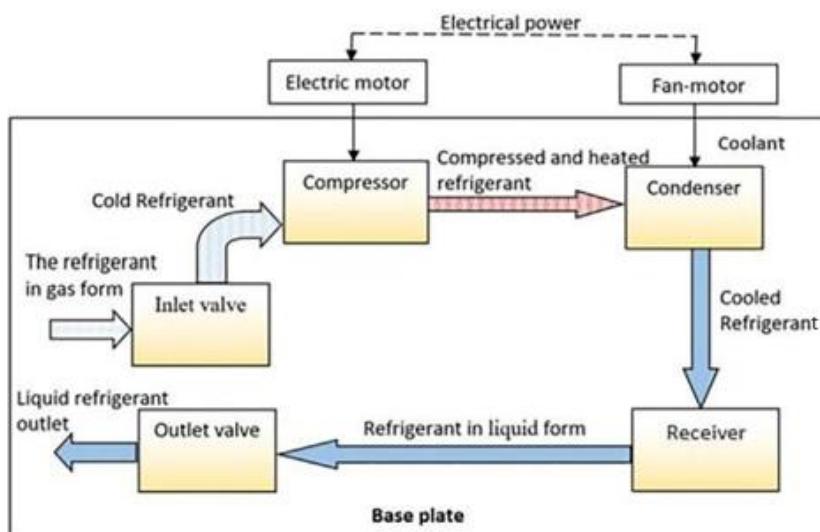


Fig. 1.2.14: Condenser Unit

Following are the various types of HVAC condensers:

- Air-cooled condensers
- Water-cooled condensers
- Evaporative

Air-Cooled Condensers

An air-cooled condenser consists of a coil of ample surface where a fan blows air, or is induced by natural draft. This type of condenser is used in small capacity refrigerating units. It is mostly designed for residential or small office air conditioners.

Timely and proper maintenance is required for air-cooled condensers. Any deposited dirt, lint, or other external materials act as an obstacle and reduces the airflow around the tubes.

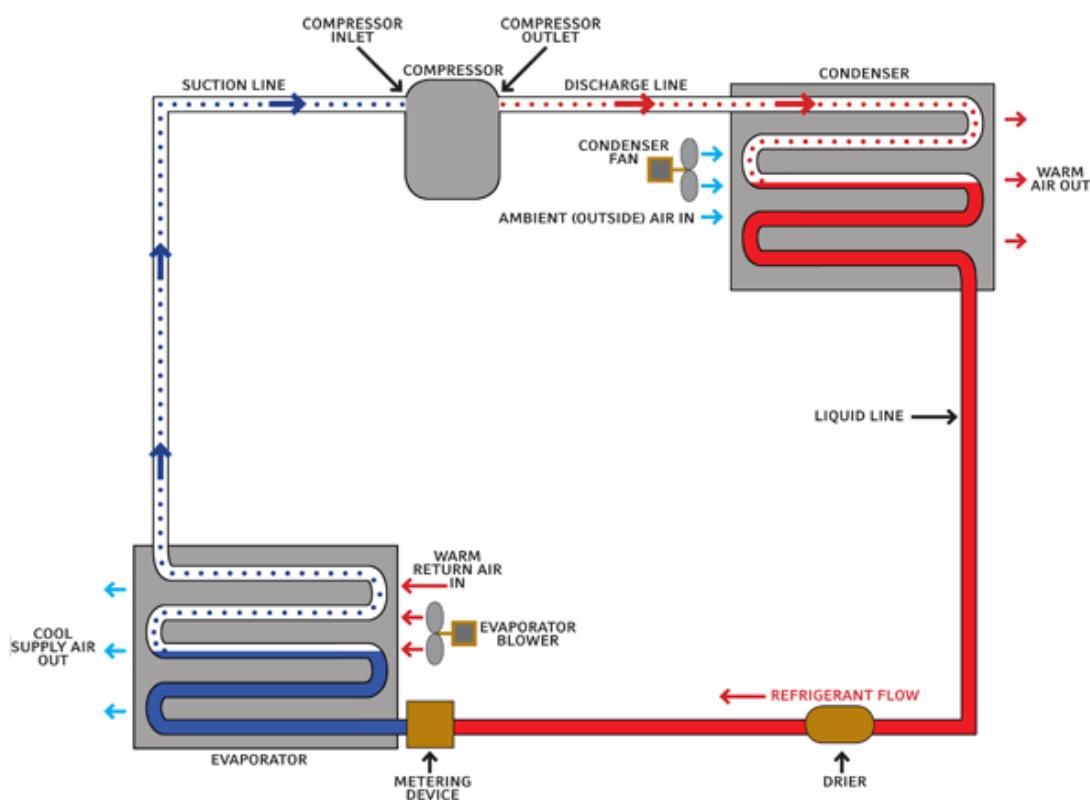


Fig. 1.2.15: Air-Cooled Condenser

Water-Cooled Condensers

In a water-cooled condenser the cooling is accomplished only by water, which circulates through tubes or coils enclosed within a shell. In these types of condensers, the refrigerant circulates throughout the annular space between the tubes/coils.

Due to its structure, it is also called double-pipe condenser.

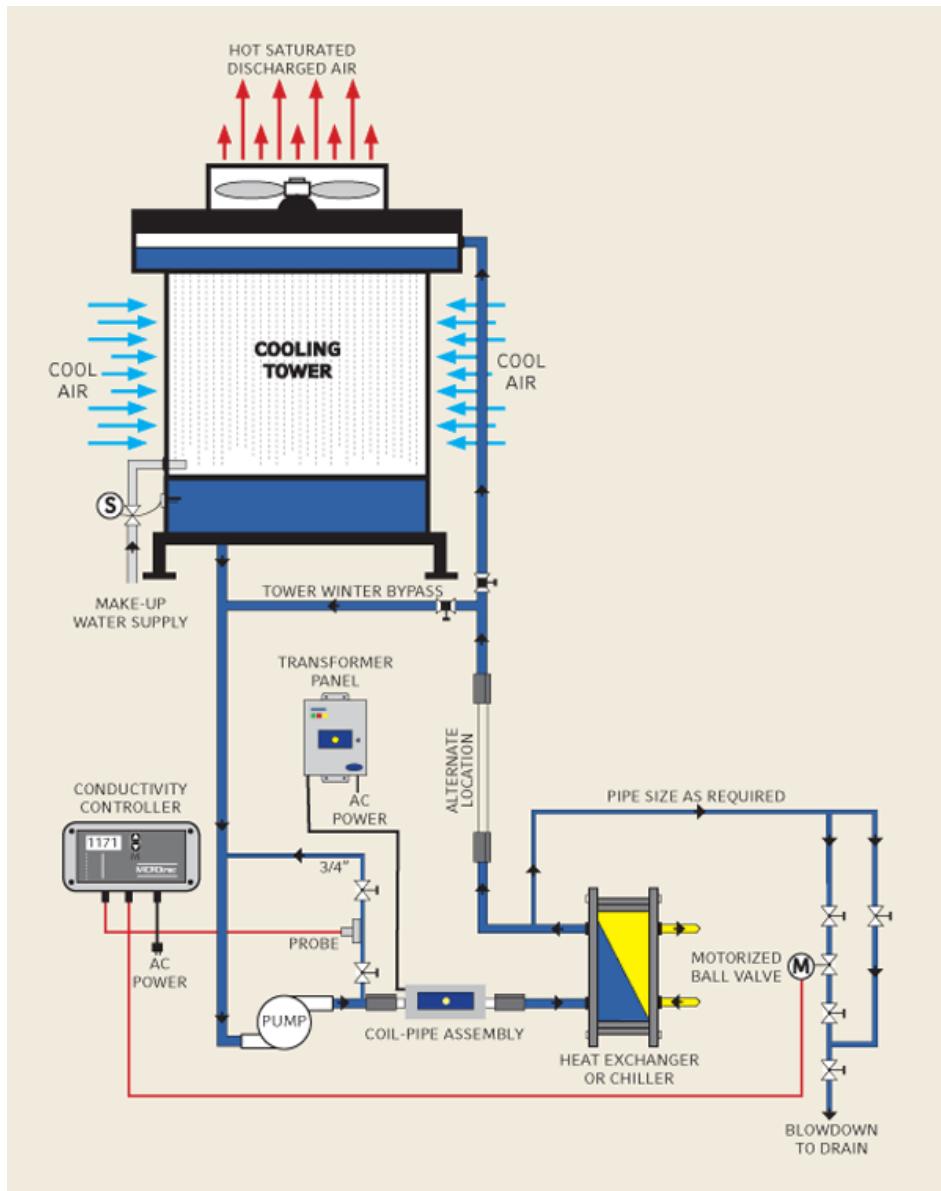


Fig. 1.2.16: Water-Cooled Condenser

Evaporative Condenser

The evaporative condenser consists of a coil. This coil is cooled by water sprayed from above and then cold air enters from the bottom and is blown across the coils. As water evaporates from the coil, it creates a cooling effect that condenses the refrigerant within the coil. The refrigerant gas in the coil is hot. It changed to the liquid state by just combining the sprayed water and the large column of moving air supplied by the fan. The water that does not evaporate is re-circulated using a pump. Because an evaporative condenser does not waste water, large compressor installations are possible in locations where water is scarce. Tests have proven that the amount of water required will not surpass the 0.03 GPM per ton of the refrigeration. This is one of the eco-friendly reasons to use this type of condenser. Evaporative condensers also eliminate water disposal problems and provide one of the most economical means of cooling refrigerant gasses in standard air conditioners.

1.2.4 VAV Box

VAV box is also known as “Variable Air Volume” box. It is one of the essential components of an HVAC system. Its function is to control the air volume. It is installed at the opening of every duct.



Fig. 1.2.17: VAV Box

The different sections of a building may vary in size and thus varies the air intensity. The small sections of the building require less and large sections will require more. In such a situation, VAV boxes help controlling the air intensity according the section size.

VAV box contains sensors and controllers, which monitors the temperature of the particular section. These sensors are set to an ideal temperature. When the temperature level reaches that level, automatically the volume of air is minimised and controlled accordingly. Thus, it automatically adjust the air volume.

1.2.5 Types of HVAC Systems

There are different types of HVAC systems available. Based on the variation in the operations, HVAC systems can be categorised as follows:

1. **Split System HVAC:** In this HVAC system, the system is split into:

- **Outdoor unit:** It contains condenser and compressor.
- **Indoor unit:** It contains the evaporation coil.
- **Air Handler:** It sends the conditioned air through the duct system

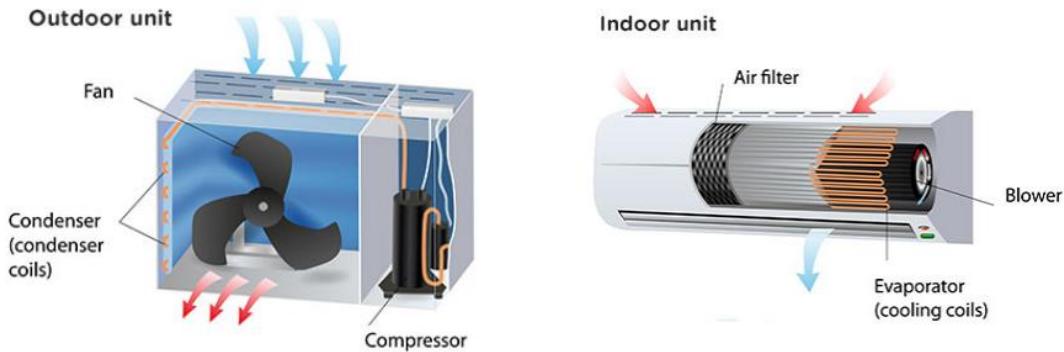


Fig. 1.2.18: Split System HVAC

There are two types of Split Systems HVAC; Mini Split also known as Ductless System and another type is Central System.

Note: Central Systems are the ducted systems. In these systems, the heat-exchanger is placed inside the furnace of the air heating system. These systems has the ability of multi-zone temperature control.

Ductless systems are the smallest HVAC system used for large single room or multiple small rooms. Commonly installed in houses.

2. **Packaged HVAC:** In these HVAC systems all the components such as evaporator coil, condenser, and compressor all packed/placed in one cabinet. These are big in size and are usually placed on the roof. A special concrete mount is built to keep the Packed HVAC cabinet. It is commonly used in small commercial buildings. The cabinet is connected with ducts through which the conditioned air is supplied to the building.

These HVAC systems often include electric heating coils or a natural gas furnace due to which there is no need of a separate furnace.

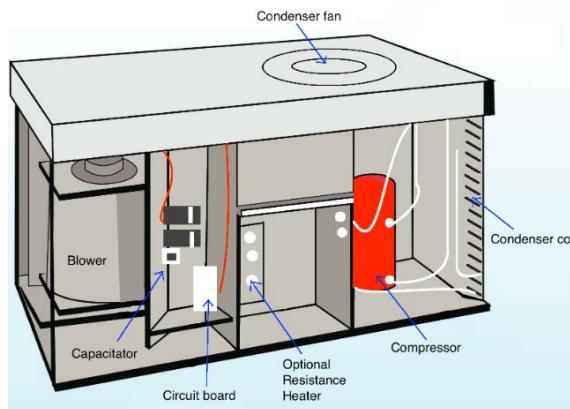


Fig. 1.2.19: Packaged HVAC

There are two types of packaged air conditioners:

- **Packaged air conditioners with water cooled condensers:** In these systems, the condenser is cooled by using water. Constant water is supplied to keep these systems working.
- **Packaged air conditioners with air cooled condensers:** In these systems, condensers are cooled by the atmospheric air. These are more like Air Handling units/Roof top units.

According to the zone (single or multiple) location and distribution, HVAC systems can be classified as:

- Central Air Conditioning System
- Local or Decentralised Air Conditioning System

1.2.5.1 Centralized Air Conditioning System

Central: It is a point or area that is in the middle of something.

Air Conditioning: It is a process for controlling the temperature, humidity (a quantity representing the amount of water vapour in the atmosphere), and ventilation (Ventilation is a fresh air circulation) in a building, to maintain a cool atmosphere in warm conditions.

System: A set of connected components that operate together to achieve a desired result.

Central air conditioning (or central A/C) is a system in which process of cooling can be achieved at a central location or middle location of building and supply this cooling to condition the various room or region in building to achieve desired temperature for comfort environment in the building.

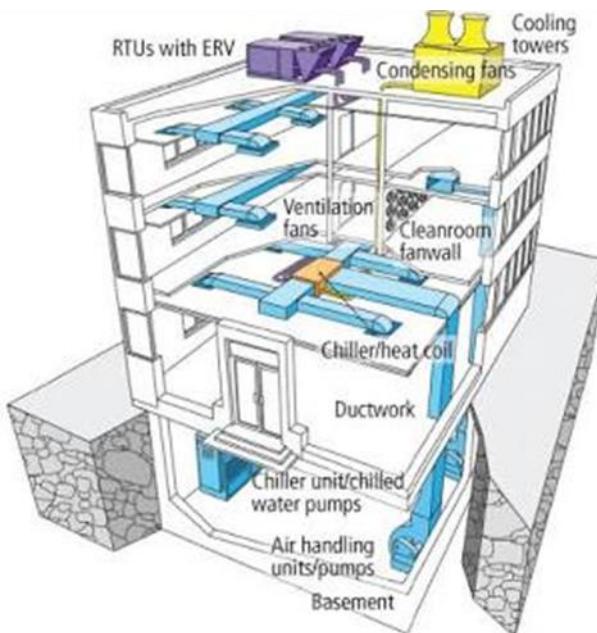


Fig. 1.2.20: Centralised Air Conditioning System

In today's modern Central Air Conditioning System, the cool air is supplied into large building according to cooling demand or load (100%, 75%, 50% etc.) into the building.

The cooling load of a building can be calculated by:

- Orientation of building
- No. of rooms
- No. of person living or working for hours
- Equipment load (light and fan)

If a Central AC system works on full load, it consumes same amount of energy which is required to run the system according to specification. If the load is 50% then it runs at half load thus saving the energy.

Air conditioning can be done directly by passing air through evaporator coil which is fixed into air handling unit (AHU). The blower that is fixed in AHU takes air from surrounding which then passes through evaporator coil and gets cooled and then, this cold air is supplied into rooms through duct.

These ducts are connected between AHU and the different sections building where cooling is required. Such kind of system is known as **Direct Expansion (DX) air conditioning system**.

In another type, air conditioning can be done by secondary refrigerant (like water) which is first chilled by primary refrigerant (like NH₃) in **chiller**. Once the water is chilled, it is then supplied in chilled water coil of the Air Handling Unit (AHU). The blower fixed in AHU takes air from surrounding and cools it using chilled water. The cold air is supplied into the different sections of the building through ducts. These ducts are connected between AHU and the different sections building where cooling is required. Such kind of system is known as **Chilled Water (CHW) air conditioning system**.

Central air conditioning system has replaced decentralized air conditioning system in multi-storey building where there is problem to install outdoor unit. If we try to put number of split AC or Window AC (e.g. 20) and Put 20 outdoor in building. If these outdoor units are not placed properly, compressor consumes more electrical power.

Note: Central Air Conditioning Systems are widely used in Multi-Story Building because of the four major parameters; Temperature, Humidity, Air Movement and Air Quality.

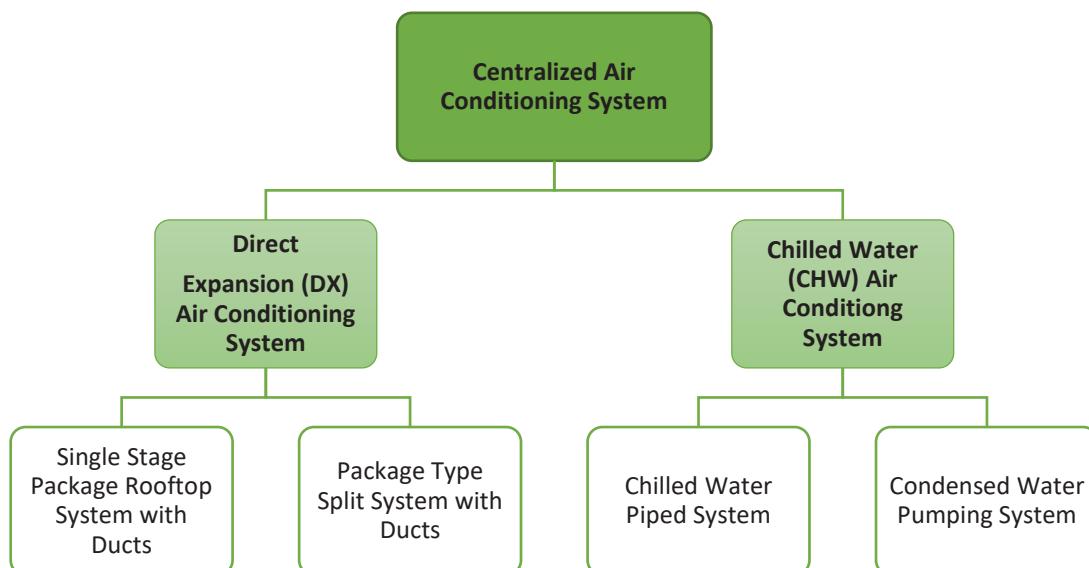


Fig. 1.2.21: Further Classification of Centralised Air Conditioning System

Direct Expansion Fresh Air Handling Unit (DX FAHU)

In such system, Direct Expansion of refrigerant to cool the Fresh Air from atmosphere is done in AHU (Air Handling Unit). That's why it is called DX-FAHU (Direct Expansion Fresh Air Handling Unit). It has two sections one is indoor unit (AHU) and another is outdoor unit (condensing unit).

In the following figure, the blue pipe from the indoor unit (AHU) acts as the inlet for liquid refrigerant into cooling coil. The red pipe is used to carry refrigerant vapour which returns after absorbing heat from fresh air.



Fig. 1.2.22(a): Direct Expansion Fresh Air Handling unit (DX FAHU)

The AHU consists of following four sections as shown in the given figure:

1. Mixing box (mix fresh and return air)
2. Filter box
3. Cooling coil Box or DX-Coil Box
4. Fan Box

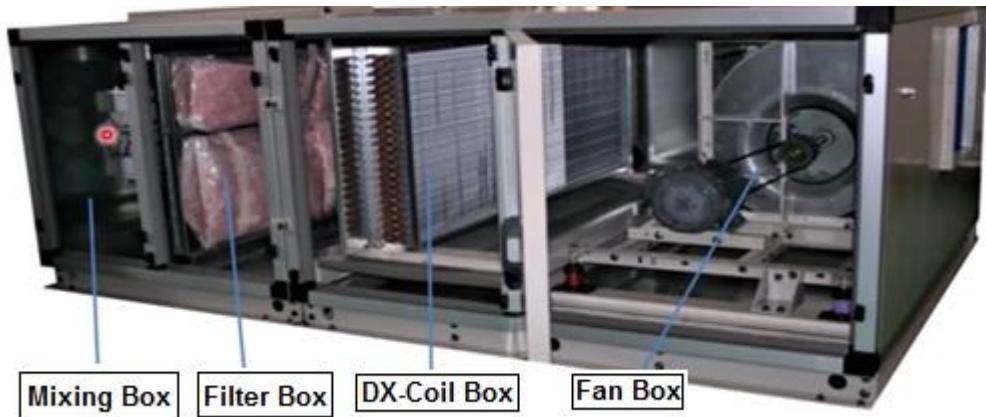


Fig. 1.2.22(b): Direct Expansion Fresh Air Handling unit (DX FAHU)

In AHU, warm air enters from mixing box and cool air exits from the fan box. In DX-FAHU, only fresh air flows and does not mixed with returning air.

In the outdoor unit, the vapour refrigerant enters the in to compressor (through red pipe). In the compressor, the vapour refrigerant pressure and temperature increases and then it passes into condenser. In the condenser, the refrigerant condenses by rejecting heat to atmosphere from the condenser coil. This condensed liquid refrigerant passes into cooling coil (through blue pipe) after expansion in AHU cooling coil.

Direct Expansion (DX) Air Refrigeration System is basically used in the following types of package units:

- **Single stage package rooftop system with ducts:** Single stage means the indoor and outdoor unit are in combined form. It is placed at rooftop because of its complex structure (both AHU and condensing unit is combined into single unit). This type of system is easy to install in building. We just have to connect the duct and power supply with motor and run the air conditioning system. It has cooling capacity from 5 TR to 130 TR (Tonne of refrigeration).

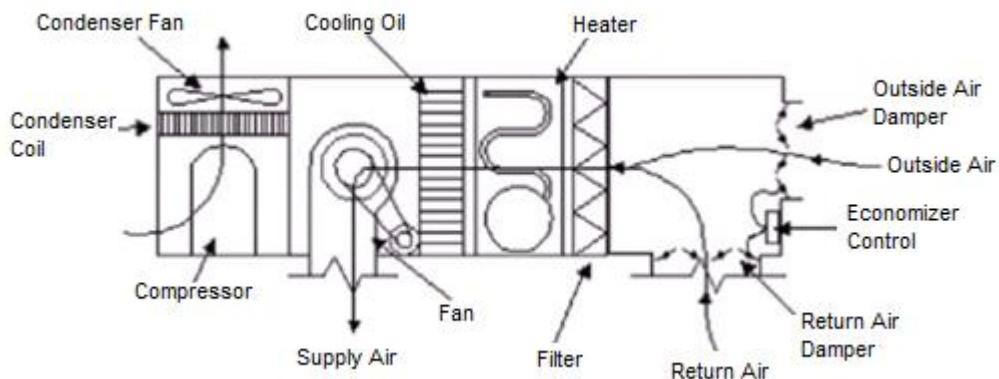


Fig. 1.2.23: Typical Single Packaged Rooftop System

- **Package type split system with duct:** Split system means both indoor and outdoor unit are separate. Indoor unit (AHU) is installed inside the building for cooling and the outdoor unit is installed outside the building for heat rejection to change vapour refrigerant into liquid phase. Such kind systems are preferable in small spaces where combined units cannot be installed. The cooling capacity of split system is 5 TR to 100 TR.

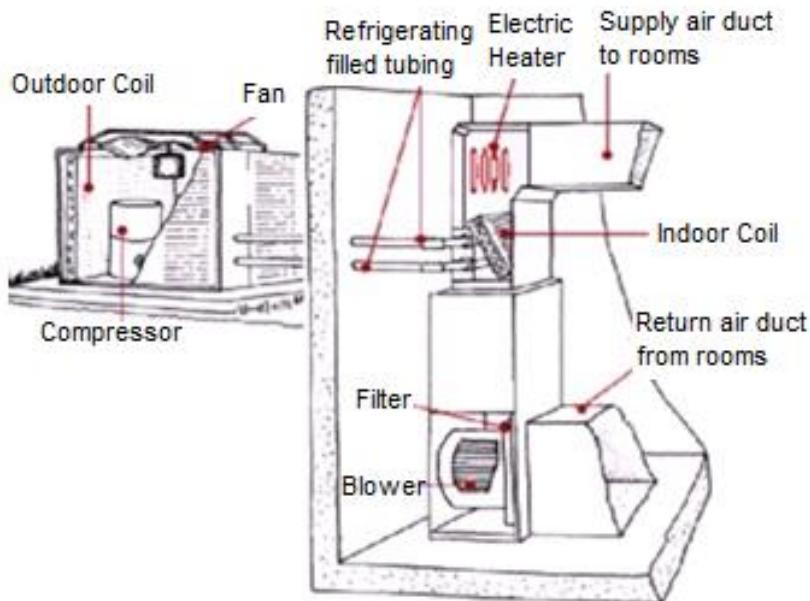


Fig. 1.2.24: Packaged Type Split System

Chilled Water (CHW) Air Conditioning System

In Chilled Water Air Conditioning System, the refrigerant is not directly expanded in AHU. This system is used to generate chilled water which acts as a secondary refrigerant. The chilled water used as refrigerant to condition air, is non-corrosive, has high specific heat value fluid, non-toxic and is cheap and thus, makes it an excellent choice compared to other secondary refrigerants such as sodium chloride brines, propylene glycols, ethylene, methanol or glycerine.

Following are the three important components of chilled water air conditioning system

1. Chilled water (Secondary Refrigerant)
2. Pipe Distribution(Between Chiller and Air Handling Unit)
3. Condensed water pipe distribution (Between Chiller and Condenser)



Fig. 1.2.25: Chilled Water Air Conditioning System

Chilled Water (Secondary Refrigerant)

The chilling process of secondary refrigerant (Water) takes place in chiller. In chiller (Heat exchanger), the primary refrigerant (i.e. NH_3) absorbs heat from the secondary refrigerant to reduce its temperature and lower down the water temperature to make it chilled water. This chilled water flows from chiller to cooling coil fixed in AHU with help of pump (as shown by blue line in Fig. 1.2.25). In Air Handling Unit (AHU), blower sucks air (fresh + return) from inlet section. When then inlet air cross the cooling coil, its temperature decreases and air becomes cooled. This cold air flows into different sections of building with the help of ducts. Subsequently, secondary refrigerant (water) temperature increases and it flows back to the chiller (as shown in by red line in Fig. 1.2.25).

Pipe Distribution (Between Chiller and Air Handling Unit)

The Pipe Distribution (Between Chiller and Air Handling Unit) is further divided in two types:

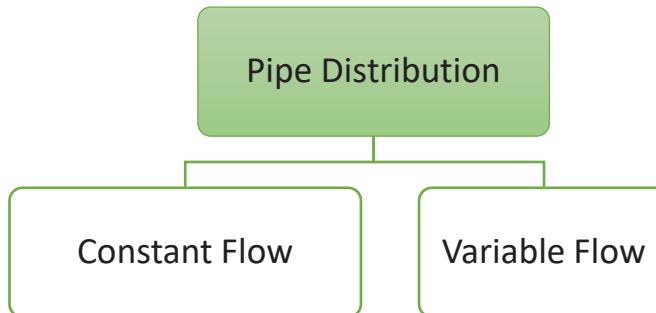


Fig. 1.2.26: Pipe Distribution

1. Constant Flow Chilled Water System:

- **Chiller Plant/Production Load** where chilled water production takes place. Here, a constant speed pump operates and gives constant flow rate of chilled water.
- **Distributed Load (Building Cooling Load):** Here, chilled water is distributed/supplied in cooling coil of AHU.

In Constant primary flow chilled water system 3-way valve is used, which is operated according to cooling demand in the building. If cooling load is 100% then AHU is working on full load then 3-way valve is fully opened and total mass of water coming from chiller flows through AHU. If cooling load is 50% then 3-way valve regulate 50% of chilled water flow through AHU and remaining 50 % will by-pass before AHU.

After the 3-way valve, balancing valve is used in to maintain the constant water flow after the exit from all AHU because the flow rate is different in different AHUs.

Thus, a constant amount of water (Gallon per Minute) is supplied from supply valve (Chiller to Building) and returns from return valve (Building to chiller). Therefore it is called Constant flow chilled water system”.

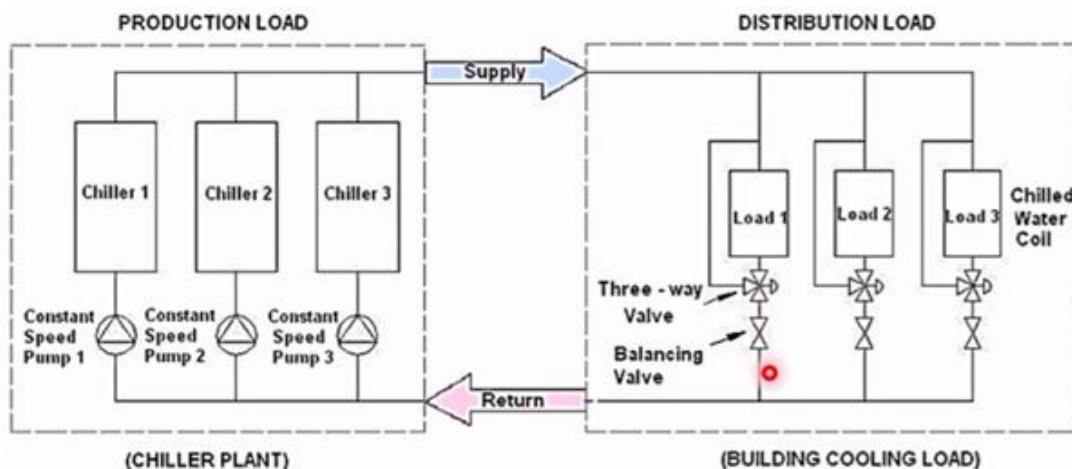


Fig. 1.2.27: Pipe Distribution: Constant Flow Chilled Water System

Advantages:

1. Lowest installed cost
2. Less space required
3. Easy to control and operate
4. Easy to commission or testing

Disadvantage

Highest Plant Energy Cost (pumps must run at full load at all low and high loads)

2. **Variable Primary Flow Chilled Water System:** This system is also divided into two sections; **Primary Loop (Production)** and **Secondary Loop (Distribution)**. The flow of water is controlled by variable speed drive(VSD) pump, in primary loop(Production) which is operated from secondary loop(Distribution).

The 2-way valve senses the temperature of building rooms. When the comfortable temperature is achieved in building rooms then 2-way valve starts supplying chilled water as per different temperature in different rooms. When less opening is provided to the flowing water the water pressure increases in differential pressure line of the loop.

Sensors senses the high pressure in differential pressure line of loop and send signals and the VSD pump controls the variable flow of chilled water supply.

For example, If load is varies in rooms (i.e. 70%, 50%), VSD pump control the flow or variance in speed that controls flow of water so that differential pressure in the given section is high then VSD pump work at lower speed and similarly if differential pressure is low then VSD pump work at higher speed.

The By-Pass Control Valve operates when flow in the loop is below 250 GPM (Gallon per Minute) by sensing the cooling load requirement.

Note: The variable primary flow chilled water system is more energy saving, High efficient and cost effective as compare to both constant primary flow chilled water system and primary/secondary flow chilled water system.

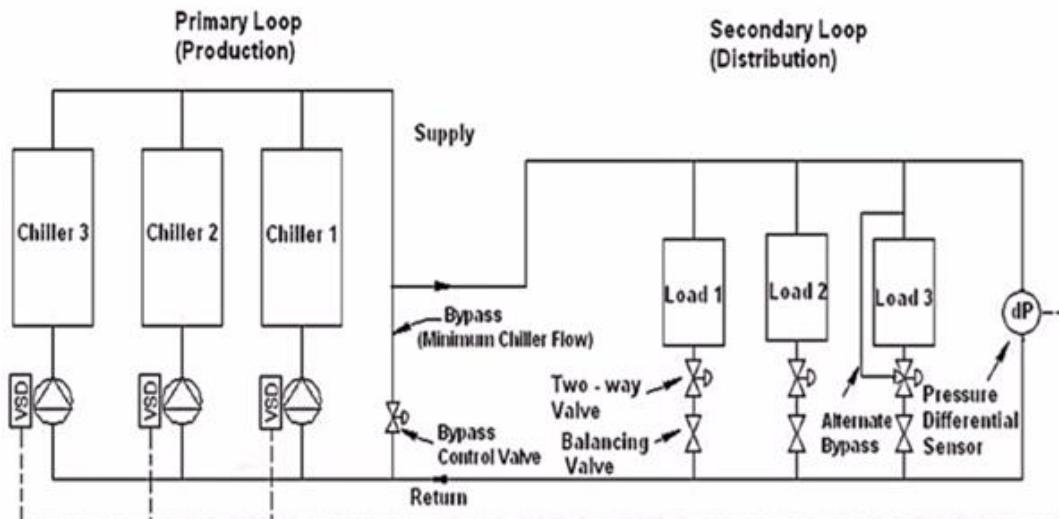


Fig. 1.2.28: Pipe Distribution: Variable Flow Chilled Water System

Advantages

1. Medium Installation Cost
 - o No secondary pumps or piping, valves, electrical, installation etc.
 - o Offset somewhat by added 2W Bypass Valve and more complex controls
2. Less Plant Space Needed
3. Best chilled water pump energy consumption
 - o VSD energy saving
 - o Lower pump design Head
 - o Higher Pump Efficiency
4. Lower Potential impact from Low Delta

Disadvantages

1. Requires more robust (complex and properly calibrated) control system
2. Requires coordinated control of chillers, isolation valves and pumps
3. Potentially longer commissioning times to tune the system
4. Need experienced Facility manager to operate/maintain properly

All Air Distribution System (DUCT)

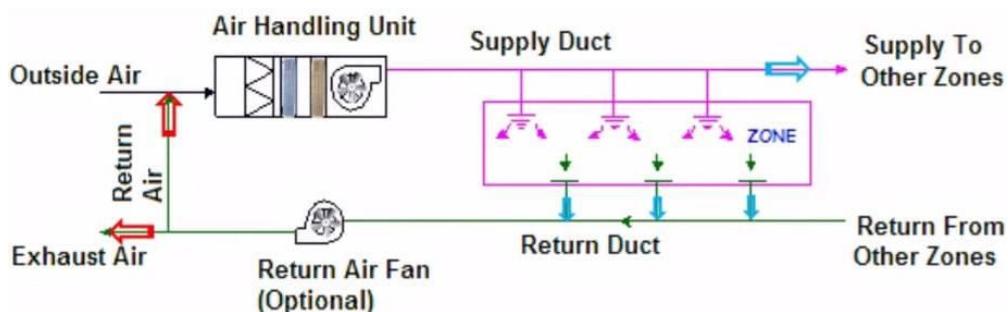


Fig. 1.2.29: All Air Distribution System (DUCT)

As you are aware of that in Central Air Conditioning System, air is supplied to different rooms/sections of the building with the help of AHU/FCU. For comfort zone, it is required to control temperature, humidity, air movement and air quality.

All air distribution system (DUCT) is used to supply air into duct and return some amount of air after circulated in condition room. It has been categorized as follows:

- Single Duct, Constant Volume, Single Zone System
- Single Duct, Constant Volume, Multi Zone System
- Single Duct, Variable Volume System
- Dual Duct, Constant Volume or VAV System

Where,

- **Single Duct** means supply air into condition room is done by duct and return air taken to AHU by plenum.
- **Constant Volume** means the volume is constant in duct with the help of fan, which is regulated by constant speed motor.
- **Single Zone System** means cool air supply in a single zone or in a single room only.

Components

The major components of All Air Distribution System are:

- **Damper:** Two Dampers are used in this system. One damper for re-circulated air and another damper for exhaust air.
- **Mixing Box:** It is used to mix return air and fresh air before entering the cooling coil. For example, if 20% of air is exhaust in atmosphere and 80% of air returns to mixing chamber, than 80% return air mixes with another 20% return air and supplied again into conditioned room.
- **Cooling Coil:** It is used to cool the air.
- **Fan (Blower):** It is used to circulate air in the duct.
- **Humidifier:** It is used to control the humidity level in room after getting signal from humidity sensor (measure amount of moisture in air) fixed in room.

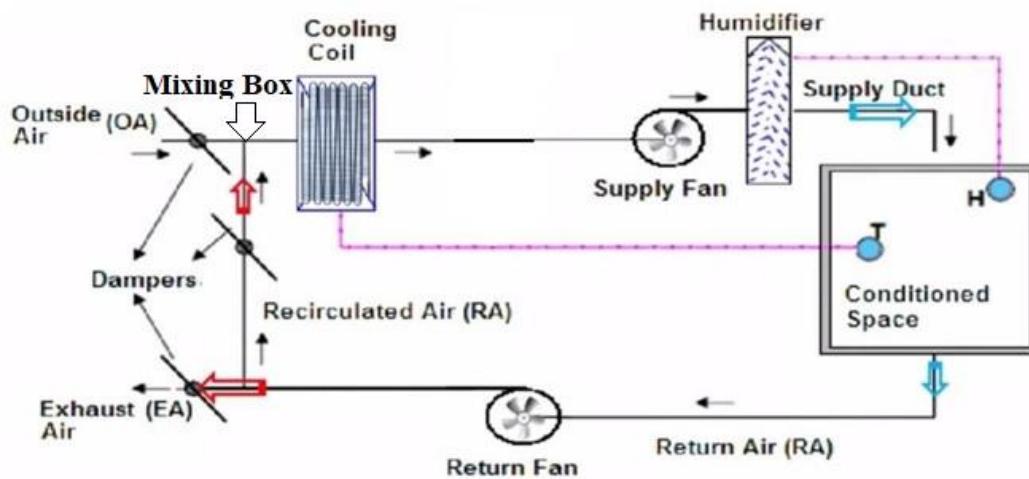


Fig. 1.2.30: Working of All Air Distribution System

Exercise



1. Differentiate between the following:
 - a. Humidity and relative humidity.
 - b. Condenser and Chiller (in HVAC System)
 - c. Air-Cooled Chiller and Water Cooled Chiller
2. Explain VAV Box
3. What is AHU? Explain.
4. What is refrigerant?

UNIT 1.3: Basics of Electricity

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Explain basic electrical terms
2. Explain the measurement of electrical parameters
3. Describe the basics of electrical circuits
4. Describe the concept of magnetism and motor theory

1.3.1 Electricity

Electricity comes into existence whenever there is a flow of electric charge between any two components. The main parameters associated with electricity are as follows:

1. Voltage
2. Current
3. Resistance

Voltage

A force that causes electricity to move across a wire/cable is known as voltage. Volt is the unit of voltage and is denoted with letter V.

Current

Electric current, or simply current, is the flow of electric charge carried through electrons moving across wires. Ampere is the unit of current and is denoted with letter I.

AC and DC Current

The following figure lists the two types of current sources that are dependent on the direction in which the electrons flow:

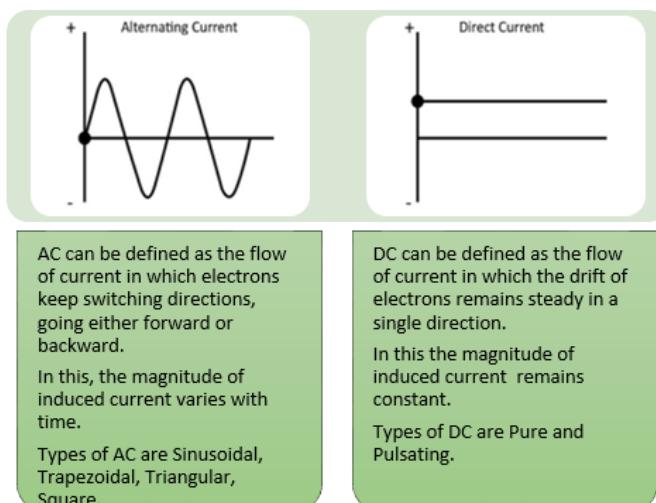


Fig. 1.3.1: Difference between AC and DC current

Resistance

Resistance is an obstruction caused by a substance to the current flow. The unit of resistance is ohm and it is denoted with the symbol, Ω . According to Ohm's law, 1Ω resistance allows $1A$ of current to flow from one point to the other with a $1V$ voltage difference.

OMH's Law

According to Ohm's law, the flow of current through a conducting material is directly proportional to the conductor's voltage. The mathematical equation of Ohm's law is as follows:

$$I = V/R$$

Where,

I is the current

V is the potential difference

R is the resistance

Ohm's law states that **R** in the preceding relation is constant and independent of the current flowing through it as shown in the following image:

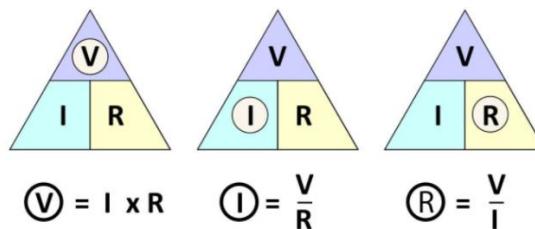


Fig. 1.3.2: Ohm's law triangle

Power Calculation and Energy Consumption

When electricity flows in an electric circuit, it results in some work done. For example, when it flows in a fan, the fan's blades rotate and when it flows in a refrigerator, it cools the things inside. Thus, when electricity flows through an appliance, it results in some work done. To calculate the electricity consumed, the following two parameters need to be considered:

1. Energy
2. Power

Energy

If the electric power is the rate or speed of work done, then electric energy is the total amount of work done in a given time period. It is a product of the power of an electrical appliance and the duration of its usage.

Power

Electric power is the rate of electrical energy transferred by any electrical circuit in a given time. The SI unit of power is watt which is represented by 'W', which is one joule per second.

The following equation shows the electrical power and energy calculation formula:

Electrical Energy (E) = Power (P) x Duration of Energy usage (T) = Power (Watt) x Time (hour)

$$E (\text{Wh}) = P (\text{W}) \times T (\text{h})$$

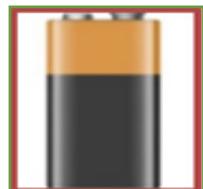
$$\text{Power} = \text{Energy} / \text{Time}$$

Example:

If 500W is used for a device for 4 hours, then consumption is = $0.5 \text{ kW} * 4 \text{ Hrs.} = 2 \text{ KWh}$.

1.3.2 Electric Circuit

An electric circuit is a path made by the interconnection of electrical components. Electrons from a voltage or current source flow along this path. The following figure lists the elements present in a basic electric circuit:



A source that provides electrical pressure known as voltage or Electromagnetic force (EMF) to electrical equipment to enable them to work.

Example: Battery



A device in a circuit which consumes electric power is called load.

Example: Bulb



A conductor that connects the supply source and the load.

Example: Wires

Fig. 1.3.3: Electric circuit constituents

An electric circuit consists of two paths/loops, as shown in the following image:

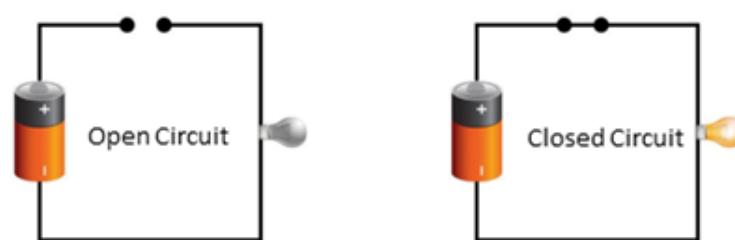


Fig. 1.3.4: Open and closed path

In a typical circuit, a battery provides voltage for the load through wires. For example, the required voltage for a bulb to glow is provided by a battery. The following image shows such an electric circuit:

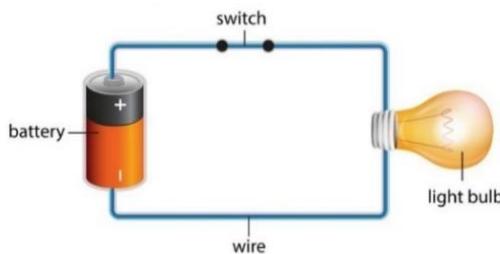


Fig. 1.3.5: An electric circuit

Types of Electric Circuit

An electric circuit is classified into two types:

- Series circuit
- Parallel circuit

Series Circuit

In this type of a circuit, all components are connected as a chain and the current flowing through each one of them is the same all over the circuit. There is a single route through which the current flows. So, the current passes through each and every component. Opening or breaking any point in a series circuit causes the whole circuit to stop functioning, which then needs to be replaced. The following image shows a series circuit:

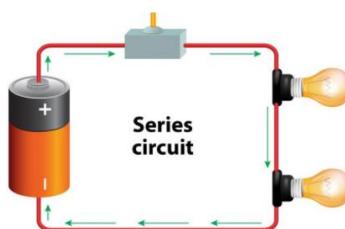


Fig. 1.3.6: A series circuit

Parallel Circuit

In this type of a circuit, two or more than two components are connected in parallel. In a parallel circuit, the components are of the same voltage. The current flow varies across the components. If any point of the circuit gets damaged, only that part needs to be replaced. The following image shows a parallel circuit:

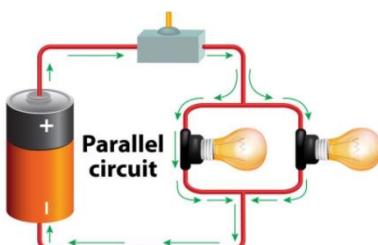


Fig. 1.3.7: A parallel circuit

Circuit Elements

A circuit consists of a number of components that may be electrical, electronic, and mechanical and so on. The following figure shows various types of circuit elements or components that are used in a control panel:

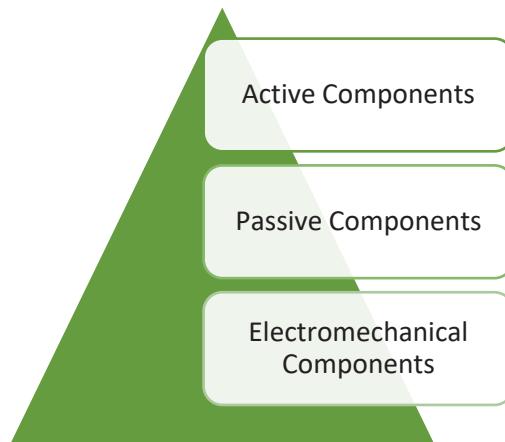


Fig. 1.3.8: Circuit elements

Active Components

Active components depend on a source of energy to perform their functions. These components can amplify current and can produce a power gain. The following figure lists the different types of active components in a circuit:

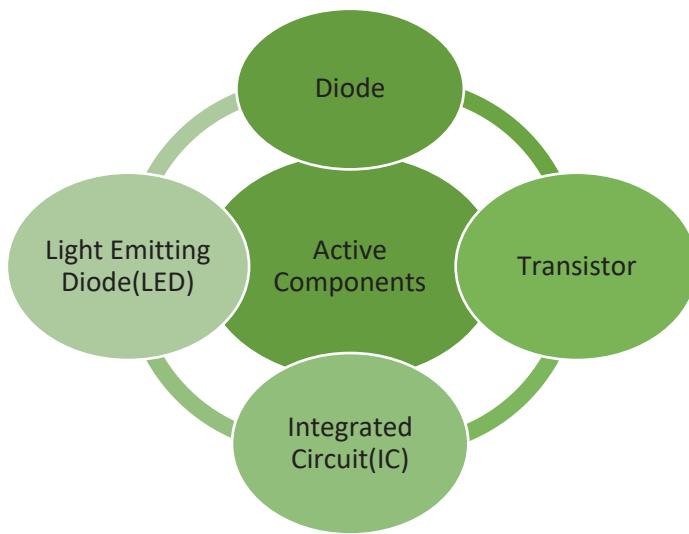


Fig. 1.3.9: Active components

Diode

A diode is a specialized electronic component with two terminals known as the anode and the cathode. It has very less resistance, ideally zero, to the flow of current in one direction whereas it has high resistance, ideally infinite, in the other direction. Diodes are usually made up of semiconductor materials such as germanium, silicon or selenium. Appliances such as refrigerators and ACs have this component in circuit boards.

The following image shows diodes:



Fig. 1.3.10: Diodes

Transistor

A transistor is an electronic device that is made up of a semiconductor material. Usually, it consists of three or more terminals for connecting to an external circuit. It is utilized to amplify or switch electrical power and electronic signals. Appliances such as refrigerators and ACs have this component in circuit boards. The following image shows a transistor:



Fig. 1.3.11: A transistor

IC

An IC, also known as a microchip, is a semiconductor wafer on which a number of small resistors, capacitors and transistors are fabricated. It can work as an oscillator, an amplifier, a timer, a counter, a microprocessor or as computer memory. Appliances such as refrigerators and ACs have this component in circuit boards. The following image shows an IC:



Fig. 1.3.12: An IC

LED

An LED is made of a p-n junction diode which releases light when it is activated. It is a two-lead semiconductor source of light. Appliances such as refrigerators and ACs have this component in their control panel display. The following image shows an LED:



Fig. 1.3.13: An LED

Passive Components

Passive components are those components which can perform their specific functions without any power source. These components are incapable of controlling current.

The following figure lists the different types of passive components in a circuit:

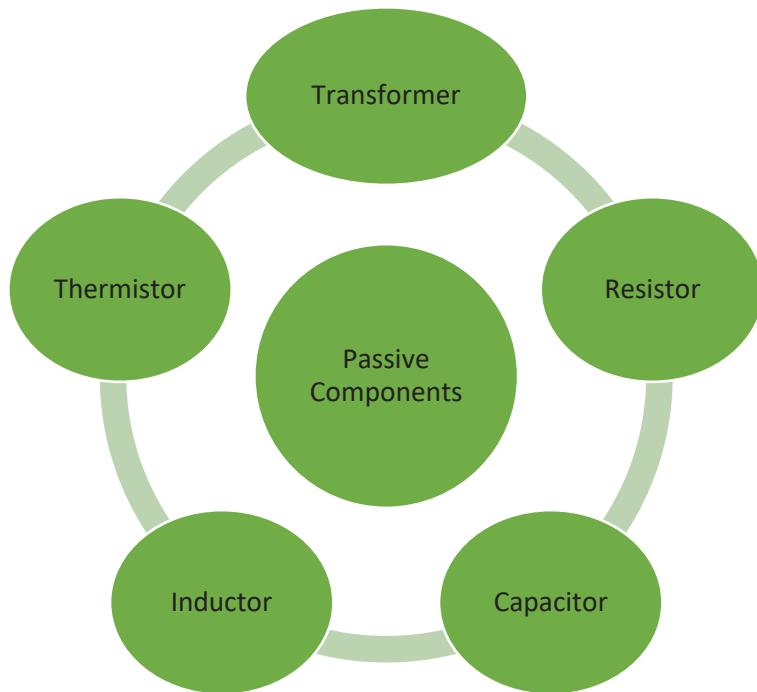


Fig. 1.3.14: Passive components

Transformer

A transformer consists of a metal core with coils of wire around it. It is a device used to convert AC to the required values by decreasing or increasing the alternating voltages in an electronic or electric system. Appliances such as refrigerators and ACs have this component in their power circuit board.

The following image shows a transformer:

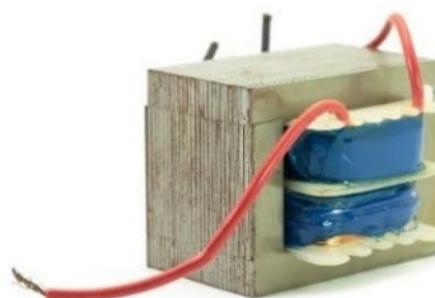


Fig. 1.3.15: A transformer

Resistor

A resistor is a component in an electronic circuit which is built to resist or limit the flow of current in that circuit. Its size varies in length from 5mm up to 300mm. Appliances such as refrigerators and ACs have this component in their circuit boards.

The following image shows resistors:

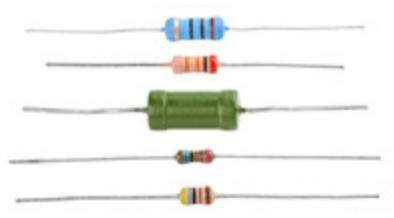


Fig. 1.3.16: Resistors

Colour Coding of Resistors

Colour coding was formulated to indicate the value of electronic resistance of a resistor.

In a resistor, colour coding is read as follows:

- Colour bands should be read from that end which has the bands nearest to it.
- The 1st and 2nd bands stand for the first two digits.
- The 3rd band represents the power-of-ten multiplier (the number of zeroes after the second digit).
- The 4th band represents the manufacturer's tolerance (accuracy of the resistor).

The following figure represents colour coding in a resistor:

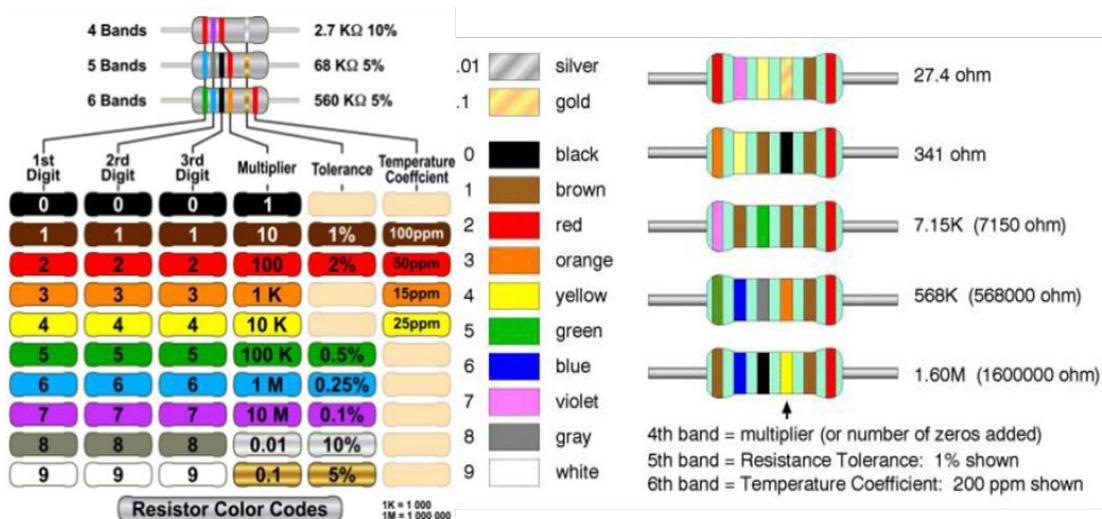


Fig. 1.3.17: Colour coding in a resistor

Capacitor

A capacitor is a device which is made up of one or more pairs of conductors and an insulator separating them. It is used to store electric charge. Appliances such as refrigerators and ACs have this component.

The following image shows capacitors:



Fig. 1.3.18: Capacitors

Inductor

An inductor consists of a coil or a wire loop. This component is used to store energy in the form of a magnetic field. The more the turns in the coil, the more will be the inductance. Appliances such as refrigerators and ACs have this component.

The following image shows inductors:



Fig. 1.3.19: Inductors

Thermistor

A thermistor is a kind of resistor which is more sensitive to temperature as compared to other resistors. It is extensively used as a temperature sensor, a self-regulating heating element and a self-resetting overcurrent protector. Appliances such as ACs have this component.

The following image shows a thermistor:



Fig. 1.3.20: A thermistor

Electromechanical components convert electric energy into mechanical energy (mechanical movement) or vice versa for carrying out electric operations.

The following figure lists various electromechanical components:

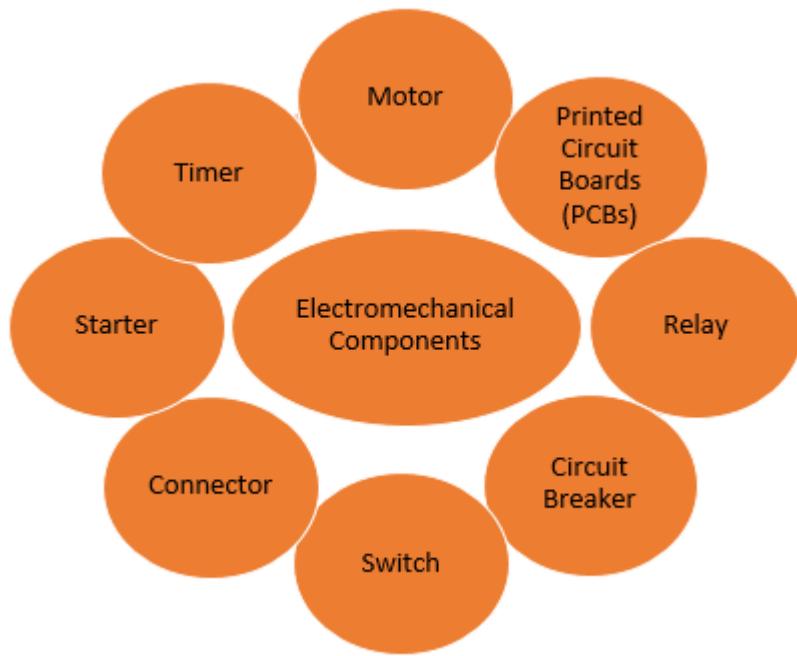


Fig. 1.3.21: Electromechanical components

Motor

A motor is an electrical component which is used to transform electrical energy into mechanical energy to produce linear or rotary force. These motors can be powered by using DC or AC motors.

The following image shows an electric motor which runs on AC power supply.



Fig. 1.3.22: A motor powered by AC current

PCB

A PCB acts as a base for the components that are mounted on its surface and are interconnected with wires, conductive tracks and so on. The components are generally fixed on the circuit board according to the specified design with the help of soldering.

Appliances such as refrigerators and ACs have this component. The following image shows a PCB:



Fig. 1.3.23: A PCB

Switch

A switch is a component used to make or break connections in an electrical circuit. It is used to divert the current from one conductor to another. It can be operated manually to control a circuit such as a light switch or can be operated by a moving object.

The following image shows a typical switch used in small appliances such as refrigerators and ACs:

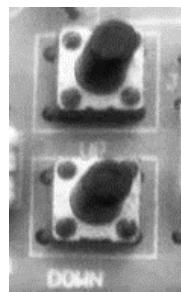


Fig. 1.3.24: Switch

Relay

A relay is a switch that controls an electrical circuit by opening and closing contacts in another circuit, electromechanically or electronically. In electromechanical relays, the opening and closing of contacts is done by a magnetic force. The electromechanical relays are operated by an electromagnet, which is a coil of wire wrapped round an iron core. In solid state relays, the switching is electronic as there are no contacts. Appliances such as refrigerators and ACs have this component. The following image shows both the relays:

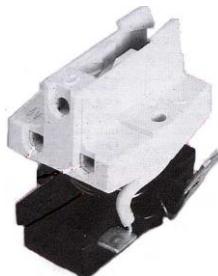


Fig. 1.3.25: Solid state relay and electromagnetic relay

Circuit Breaker

A circuit breaker is a requisite component of an electrical power system required for its control and protection. It is a switching device which can be operated manually as well as automatically. Its main function is to shield an electric circuit from harm caused by overload or short circuit. It interrupts the current flow when protective relays find out a fault. Appliances such as refrigerators and ACs have this component.

The following image shows a circuit breaker:



Fig. 1.3.26: A circuit breaker

Starter

A starter in a refrigeration or air conditioning system helps start the motor. The starter is used since the motor windings installed in the system takes time to start as there is a previously maintained high pressure head in the system. This starter motor helps the main motor to start by decreasing the voltage and varying the value of frequency to the main motor start up.

The following image shows a starter:



Fig. 1.3.27: A starter

Timer

A timer or time switch is a type of circuit which is used for timing the refrigeration or air conditioning units. The timer operates as a switch which is controlled by a timing circuitry device. Air conditioning systems have timers which turns on/off the unit for certain period of time, set automatically or manually.

1.3.3 Magnetism and Motor Theory

A motor is an electrical component which is used to transform electrical energy into mechanical energy to produce linear or rotary force. Unlike magnetic solenoids, they generate usable mechanical powers. Following the air conditioner fan motor:



Fig. 1.3.28: Air Conditioner Fan Motor

In a normal motoring mode, force is generated inside the motor through the interaction between its winding currents and magnetic field.

Types of motors are:

1. Capacitor start motor
2. Relay start motor

Capacitor Start Motor

In a capacitor start motor, the capacitor is connected in series with the starter winding, which causes current in starter winding. When the motor reaches 75% of the rated speed, the capacitor and the starter winding is disconnected by a switch.

A capacitor start motor is used in air conditioners and washing machines. The following image shows a circuit diagram of a capacitor start motor:

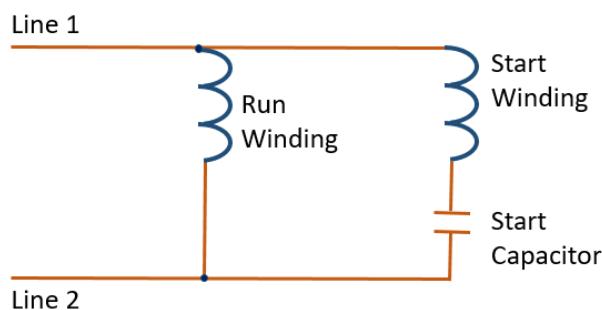


Fig. 1.3.29: Circuit diagram of capacitor start motor

Relay Start Motor

In a relay start motor a relay is connected between the starter and run winding, which causes current in starter winding. Then the resistance of motor increases with current, which cuts the start winding then the motor works only on run winding.

Relay start motor is used in refrigerators. The following image shows a circuit diagram of a relay start motor:

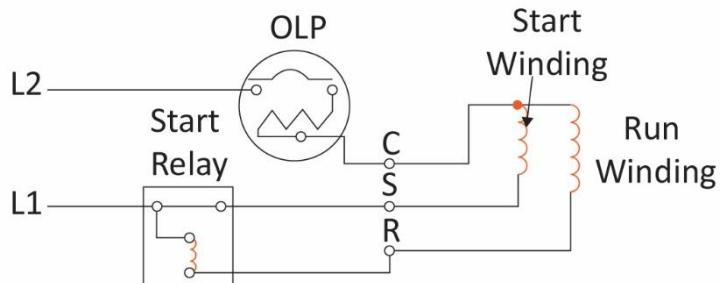
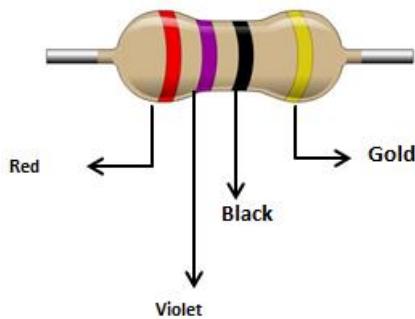


Fig. 1.3.30: Circuit diagram of relay start motor

Exercise



1. Differentiate between AC and DC current.
2. Calculate the resistance and tolerance of the following resistor.



3. If $R_1 = 8\Omega$, $R_2 = 8 \Omega$ and $R_3 = 4 \Omega$
Calculate the total resistance in:
 - o Series circuit
 - o Parallel circuit

Activity



Calculate resistance in a given circuit using Ohm's law. (*The aim of this activity is to analyse if the concept of Ohm's law used for calculating resistance is understood or not.*)

Equipment required:

1. Resistor
2. Multimeter
3. Power Source

Time required: 15-20 minutes

UNIT 1.4: Tools and Equipment

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Identify the types of tools used by an HVAC technician
2. Identify the equipment used by an HVAC technician
3. Identify the safety measures to be taken while handling tools

1.4.1 Tools and Equipment

Tools are non-consumable items that can be used in assembling RAC components. Tightening of bolts, stripping wires and measuring angles and length can be easily done with the help of specific tools. The tools can be divided into following categories based on the type of use:

- **Hand Tools:** These tools can be operated easily to perform tasks by using power and grip of hand. Some examples of hand tools are screw driver, hammer, measuring tape, wrenches and so on. The following image shows the basic hand tools used in the assembling of RAC components:



Fig. 1.4.1: Hand tools used in RAC components' assembling

- **Pneumatic Assembly Line Tools:** These tools are pneumatically powered tools used in the assembly line. They are handy and quick to operate. These tools are available on the line and thus easy to access and operate by the HVAC technician. The following image shows a pneumatic tool used in the assembly line:



Fig. 1.4.2: Pneumatic tool

Basic Hand Tools

The following tools are used for basic assembling of RAC components:

1. **Detachable Small Handle Screwdriver:** It is a screw driver which can be used from either end. One end has a plus '+' shape for '+' shaped screws and the other end is for minus '-' shaped screws.
2. **Detachable Long Handle Screw Driver:** It is a similar kind of a screw driver with a long stem. This also can be used from either end. One end has a plus '+' shape for '+' shaped screws and the other end is for minus '-' shaped screws.
3. **Slim Line Slot Head Screw Driver:** It is used where hands or fingers cannot reach. It has a long and thin stem and has a minus '-' shape.
4. **Round Screw Driver:** It is used to screw and un-screw the minus '-', plus '+', star '**', hexagonal or any other type of screw. It has a magnetic front socket which can hold bits of various shapes.
5. **Bit Pad:** It is a pad with eight-ten bits of varied shapes to be used with a round screw driver.
6. **Extension Bit/Rod:** It is a component that is attached to the front of the round screw driver to increase its length. Once attached, it increases the reach of the screw driver by an inch to three-four inches. The following image shows a screw driver set:



Fig. 1.4.3: A screw driver set with bits

7. **Tester:** It is used to check the presence of electric current in various sockets and wires during the assembling process. The following image shows a tester:



Fig. 1.4.4: A tester

8. **Double Ended Round Spanner:** It is a round spanner that can be used at either end. Each end has a different size. Generally, a set of spanners has a combination of sizes 10-11mm, 12-13 mm or 13-14mm.

9. **Simple Spanner:** It is a normal spanner (wrench) which can be used at either end. These are also two in number. One is a combination of 10-11mm and the other is a combination of 12-13mm and 14-15mm. The following image shows a spanner set:



Fig. 1.4.5: Spanner with wrench heads

10. **Adjustable Wrench:** It is a spanner that can be adjusted as per the head size of a nut/bolt. It is helpful in situations where the HVAC technician encounters a head which is either bigger or smaller than the limited sized spanner they otherwise carry along with them.
11. **Measuring Tape:** It is a self-retracting pocket tape measure which is used to measure the lengths and other parameters of objects while carrying out assembling. The following image shows a measuring tape:



Fig. 1.4.6: A measuring tape

12. **Spirit Level Meter:** It is an ideal tool for precise determination of horizontals, inclines and angles of a surface. The following image shows a spirit level meter:



Fig. 1.4.7: A spirit level meter

13. **Heavy Duty Hammer:** It is used for driving nails, fitting parts, and breaking objects. It has a handle and a head, with most of the weight in the head. One side of the head has a little slit that is used to pull out nails from brackets. The following image shows a heavy-duty hammer:



Fig. 1.4.8: A heavy duty hammer

14. **Pliers:** Pliers are hand tools that are designed primarily for gripping objects by using leverage. Three types of pliers are used by an assembling operator. They are as follows:
- Combination Pliers:** These are used for gripping small objects, to cut and bend wire and cable and to hammer other small tools such as a chisel, a screwdriver and small nails. These pliers have a gripping joint at their snub nose and cutting edge in their jaws. They also have insulated handle grips that reduce (but do not eliminate) the risk of an electric shock due to contact with live wires.
 - Side Cutter or Heavy Duty Cutter:** These are used to cut wires and nails.
 - Wire Stripper/Cutter:** It is used for stripping electric wires to remove insulation from the wires while leaving them intact. It is an adjustable plier which can be adjusted using a screw driver to enable its usage on a thicker wire as well. The following image shows pliers and cutters:



Fig. 1.4.9: Cutters and pliers

15. **Component Box:** It is a small box to keep small spare parts like screws, nuts, bolts, p-clips and so on.
16. **Digital Multimeter:** It is an electronic device which is capable of taking various electronic measures such as current, voltage or resistance. The basic measurements that are normally made include voltage, current (both AC and DC) as well as resistance. Advanced multimeters have a variety of other functions such as measurement of frequency (not up to a high level of precision), capacitance and temperature. The following image shows a digital multimeter:



Fig. 1.4.10: A digital multimeter

17. **Hacksaw:** It is used by the installer to cut a plastic pipe or a plastic conduit. It is a hand saw with a C shaped frame which holds a blade. The following image shows a hacksaw:



Fig. 1.4.11: A hacksaw

18. **Cutting Knife:** It is used at a workplace to cut the tape of sealed packages without damaging the packaging content. It is also known as a utility knife. The following is an image of a cutting knife:



Fig. 1.4.12: A cutting knife

19. **Tube Cutter:** This tool is used to cut a copper or a plastic pipe in a clean, convenient and fast manner. It is also known as a pipe cutter. The following image shows a tube cutter:



Fig. 1.4.13: A tube cutter

20. **Torque Wrench:** It is used to measure the torque in nuts or bolts. It is mainly used in prevention of over tightening of bolts. The following image shows a torque wrench:



Fig. 1.4.14: A torque wrench

21. **Wrench:** This tool is used to turn fasteners such as nuts and bolts by applying torque and tightening the screw. The following image shows a wrench:



Fig. 1.4.15: A wrench

22. **Refrigerant Gas Detector:** This tool is used to detect a gas leak around the appliance or in the surrounding. The following image shows a gas detector:



Fig. 1.4.16: A gas detector

Digital Clamp Meter: An electrical tester which combines a multimeter with a current sensor is known as a clamp meter. The probes in the device measure voltage whereas the clamps measure the current. The clamps are the hinged jaws joined to an electric meter that allows users to clamp around the cable/wire anytime for measuring the current without disturbing any other element. While using a clamp meter, the wire/cable to be measured is not disconnected. The following image shows a clamp meter:



Fig. 1.4.17: A clamp Meter

Pneumatic Tools

These tools as discussed earlier are powered by compressed air and are easy to operate. The tools are quick to work with and thus increase the work efficiency on the assembly line.

1. **Drill Machine:** It is used to create holes and through-holes in concrete and masonry (max. diameter 20 mm). It is also used for drilling metal sheets, wood, drywall and driving screws. It operates at 600 W. It can be operated in two modes, normal as well as hammer. The normal motion is a rotatory motion whereas hammer motion is a combination of rotatory and hammer motion.

There are separate bits for both the modes. The following image shows a drill machine and drill bits:

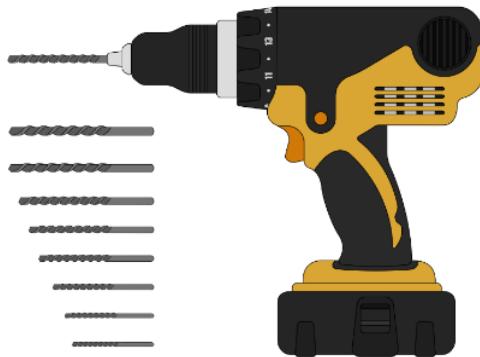


Fig. 1.4.18: A drill machine and drill bits

Bits: The way a drill machine has two modes, normal and hammer, bits are also of two types. One set of bits is used for normal drilling whereas the other set is used for hammer drilling. A hammer drilling bit has got a different shape and also has grooves for better grip. It is generally used for concrete and comes in varied sizes such as 6mm, 8mm, 10mm, 12mm and 47mm in length.

2. **Pneumatic Screw Drivers:** Pneumatic screw drivers are used to tighten or loosen the screws that are mounted with a measurable amount of strength, which is required for a good mounting. It is a multipurpose tool as only by changing the head of the tool, multiple types of screws can be mounted and removed. The following image shows a pneumatic screw driver:



Fig. 1.4.19: A pneumatic screw driver

1.4.2 Maintenance and Housekeeping of Tools

As tools are essential for an HVAC technician, regular maintenance and checks needs to be done to maintain the tools in good condition. Using or working with a damaged, broken or unsuitable tool is hazardous.

To keep the tools in good condition, the following practices should be adhered:

- The tools should be taken from the store as per the requirement and returned in good condition after completion of work.
- A regular routine check of the tools should be done to examine their condition.
- The damaged and worn out tools should be fixed, else the tools should be replaced.
- Before and after completion of the work, the tools should be cleaned properly.
- The edges of sharp edged tools should be maintained sharp.
- The tools should be kept in the store department in an ordered way in proper toolboxes.
- The sharp tools should be kept with protective guard over the sharp edges.
- The broken tools should be discarded with care.
- Regular examination, repair and maintenance of the tools should be carried out only by a competent person.
- Any issue related to damage or faulty tool/equipment should be reported to the store supervisor or senior.

Safety While Working

While working at a site, an HVAC technician should ensure to follow the safety regulations to avoid any accident. Safety is the primary concern as per any company's policy and standards.

Safety should be followed:

- While handling tools/equipment
- Working around machines and electrical components.

The following safety points should be considered while working:

- **Overloading** – While using tools/equipment, make sure that they are not overloaded or operated beyond working limits. The ladder or structure over which work has to be done should not be overloaded as well.
- **Overreach** – Do not try to reach beyond a point while working on an elevated surface. Keep the safety line tied with the safety belt while working.
- **Resting Tools** – Avoid resting or hanging of tools over the assembly line.
- **Carrying Tools** – Always carry tools safely or use tool belts for carrying them.
- **Stability** – Always ensure to make a stable point of contact on the ground, especially while working around automated machines or assembly lines. Ensure making three points of contact rule for stable position before starting the work.
- **Standardised Equipment** – Ensure the use of standardised equipment like tools, ladders and safety equipment.
- **Maintenance** – Always maintain tools and equipment in good condition and clean them before using.

First Aid

While working on an assembly line and handling tools and equipment, a person might suffer some injury. So, to handle such a situation the operator should know how to use the first aid kit, which can provide the necessary first aid. The first aid box may contain:

- Instructions to provide first aid
- Sterile and antiseptic liquids
- Bandages of appropriate sizes and cotton
- Scissors, clippers and tweezers
- Cold pads
- Disposable gloves

The operator should have the required basic knowledge to provide first aid. Also, in case of any accident, the person should contact emergency services as soon as possible via the available communication methods.

Exercise 

1. Look at the picture. Pick any 6 tools and write about them in the following table:



Name of the tool	Function/Usage of the tool

2. List 5 points that can help an HVAC technician to keep his/her tools in a good working condition:

Activity



HVAC system functioning is controlled using software. Browse about such software and create a presentation. Highlight its features, interface and usage.

(The aim of this activity is to help you understand various software available and their usage for HVAC systems monitoring and functioning.)

Equipment required:

1. Laptop/desktop with Internet connection
2. MS Office for PowerPoint presentation
3. Notepad & pen

Time required: 30-40 minutes





2. Pre-requisites of Work

- Unit 2.1 – Interacting with Supervisor
- Unit 2.2 – Interacting with Colleagues
- Unit 2.3 – Identify the Possible Solutions and Suggest to Client
- Unit 2.4 – Plan Work Schedule
- Unit 2.5 – Analyse the Drawings and Layouts



Key Learning Outcomes



At the end of this module, you will be able to:

1. Demonstrate effective communication while interacting with the customer supervisor to get work requirement and work schedule
2. Identify the requirement of service and repair by interacting with the client and supervisors
3. Analyse the drawings and layouts of site
4. Identify the possible solutions and suggest to client
5. Plan work schedule and collect tools equipment from store
6. Deliver quality work to get client satisfaction and positive feedback

UNIT 2.1: Interacting with Supervisor

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Identify work requirements and targets
2. List the ways to ensure quality and timely completion of work
3. List the points to understand the work plan
4. Explain the principles of work ethics

2.1.1 Understand the Work Requirement

For a person to work, it is important to understand the work requirements. The work requirements for an HVAC technician include certain responsibilities as shown in the following figure:

- Take work order from the supervisor about the work assigned
- Understand the work requirements
- Follow the line of authority
- Issue on time the tools and the equipment and use appropriate drawings
- Keep upto date with new products and developments
- Plan, organize and control work for efficiency
- Report on the shortage of components such as screw, nut and other tools
- Find solutions to work related issues and queries or escalate issues of concern to the supervisor
- Highlight and resolve the issues occurring during assembling process

Fig. 2.1.1: Meaning of work requirement

Work requirement is also a document which has the date, location and the details of a particular task, which has to be done. It is the record of the task which is to be performed. The HVAC technician should be able to understand the task assigned and its requirement.

2.1.2 Quality and Timely Completion of Work

A few simple principles, if adhered to, can ensure production of quality work. As an HVAC technician, maintenance of quality and timely completion of work can be done in the following ways:

1. Ensure that work is done is as per the guidelines and standard of the company.
2. Plan and organize the day to day activities of production depending upon the instruction given by supervisor.
3. Follow the proposed plan of action.
4. Inform the supervisor in case of any potential hazards.
5. Follow guidelines of job instructions or work manuals.
6. Work to ensure quality of finished product.

The HVAC technician would get a job sheet or work allocation from the supervisor. The supervisor would also share a plan of action with the HVAC technician to ensure adherence to timelines and quality for the work assigned and an explanation if the target is not met. The following figure highlights the points which help an HVAC technician in understanding the plan to achieve 100 percent quality standards and timely completion of work:



Fig. 2.1.2: Achieving quality and timely completion of work

2.1.3 Work Ethics

Work ethics mean differentiating between the right and the wrong way of doing a job and adopting the right conduct. Work ethics involve certain principles as shown in the following figure:



Fig. 2.1.3: Work ethics

Resolve Personnel Issues

Resolving personnel issues involves the followings:

- Communicating effectively with the personnel ensures positive feedback in the organization. Two-way communication within and beyond the facility is also advised for an HVAC technician in any organization.
- All conflicts of interest, misunderstandings and personnel grievances need to be understood and then reported to the higher authority.
- Suggestions on resolving the problems is important as it helps the facility staff to concentrate on the job at hand.

Any personal issue or grievance also needs to be attended by the HVAC technician himself/herself before pushing the issue through to the supervisors. Managing the personnel is the most important part of team effort towards a unified goal.

Deliver Work of Expected Quality

Delivery of work as per expected quality should be maintained in the following ways:

- Ensure the work done is as per the guidelines and standard of the company.
- Plan and organize work for the day.
- Follow the plan.
- Inform supervisor in case of any deviation or emergency.

Inform Superior about Potential Hazards

Understanding all the possible hazards that can happen in a work place are the responsibilities of an HVAC technician. One possible cause of hazard could be the lack of clear understanding about the company's code of conduct or reference handbook which puts constraints on the use of equipment for purpose that is against the code of conduct. An HVAC technician can handle the hazard by:

- Communicating any such hazard to the supervisor to prevent unaffordable downtimes which could hamper critical functioning of the organization.
- Having clear communication with the other staff members and getting in place early warning systems for potential threats in another dimension.

- Making risk assessment which is an integral part of his/her job description. Potential hazards should be assessed with precision and supported with practical evidence.
- Adopting a systematic approach which is another dimension of communicating potential hazards.

The following figure shows a systematic approach for handling hazards:

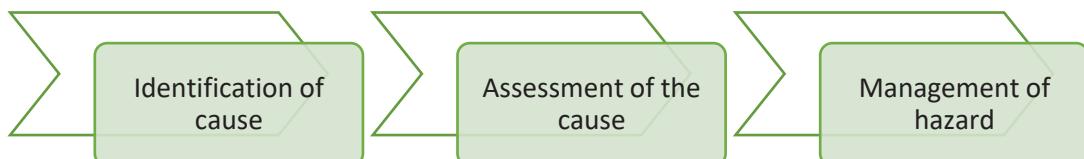


Fig. 2.1.4: Systematic approach for handling hazards

Exercise

1. Explain what you mean by “Code of Conduct”.
2. Why is it important to inform your supervisor about any hazard?

UNIT 2.2: Interacting with Colleagues

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Explain the importance of healthy interpersonal relationship
2. List the ways to establish better communication among co workers
3. Explain the importance of informal communication

2.2.1 Interpersonal Relationship

Every worker works towards a common goal in an organization, still all of them are divided by certain roles and activities and the way they accomplish that objective. Interpersonal communication – whether formal or informal - is the most common and important key to accomplish productivity and perform social functions in an organization.

The primary objective of an HVAC technician is to understand the process and the health of the communication taking place among the co-workers in order to improve its quality. A healthy interpersonal relationship enables carrying out the tasks as shown in the following figure:

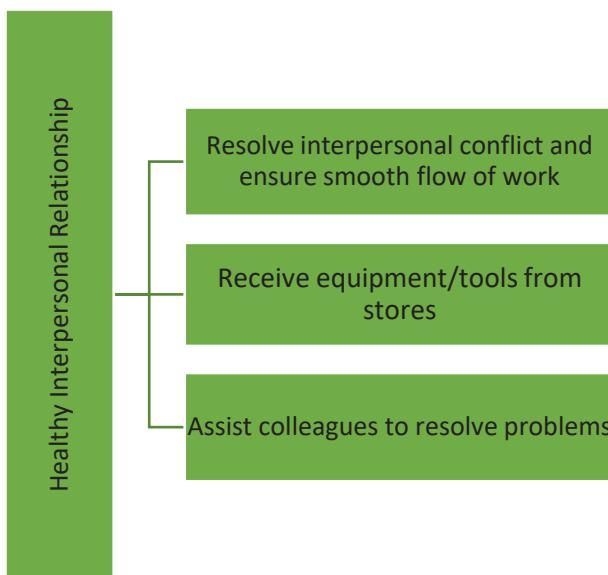


Fig. 2.2.1: Healthy interpersonal relationship

Resolve Conflicts

As discussed earlier, individuals are divided by roles and responsibilities in an organization despite working towards a common goal. Hence possibility of conflicts is nearly unavoidable.

A few tips to reinstate better communication among co-workers in such a quandary are as follows:

- **Clarify Role and Responsibilities:**

Going to basics is the best way to resolve a problem. Role of an HVAC technician is to ensure a glitch-free workflow in an organization. The entire team should participate in

addressing issues, whether small or big. Providing a more rounded perspective of job roles and responsibilities offers inculcation of a positive and resolute approach for problems among co-workers. Also, this enables people with less job experience to take up things in a more constructive manner.

- **Plan Strategically:**

In most organizations, conflicts between co-workers occur due to tight schedules and deadlines. Employees working on deadlines are required to work on short turnaround times, resulting in causing frustration and stress. Strategic planning in advance is the best way to avoid such circumstances. Irrespective of the team size, this can be achieved by deploying tools like calendar to communicate deadlines. The following image shows planning using a calendar:



Fig. 2.2.2: Planning using a calendar

Receive Equipment/Tools from Stores

Getting the job done in a process depends on information communication. Furthermore, accuracy of the end result entirely depends on effective inter-personal communication. For example, an electronic appliances company wants to replace old appliances with the new ones, accurately and smoothly. The entire exchange process depends on how effectively the electronic company communicated with the person in charge at the store, the requirement for infrastructure upgrade.

Assist Colleagues

Be it work allocation, manpower distribution or identification of areas of high responsiveness, healthy communication is the key to improve service quality. Informal communication is what is usually seen to be dominant in most workplaces. People asking for help from the person sitting at the adjacent desk to troubleshoot a module issue, rather than consulting an HVAC technician, is one of the most common examples of informal communication.

The communication is spontaneous and successful in achieving the goal, paving the way to formal interpersonal communication. Despite having established communication procedures, the informal communications occur in every organization and help in resolving problems and conflicts in real time.

Hence, the role of an HVAC technician is to make proper communication with colleagues regarding errors occurring in any step of the assembly process.

The following image shows colleagues assisting each other:



Fig. 2.2.3: Colleagues assisting each other

2.2.2 Team Coordination

An HVAC technician needs to be able to work in a team. To work in a team, an operator should be able to get along with fellow operators, respect others and show a cooperative behaviour always.

Working in and as a team enables some positive aspects as listed in the following figure:

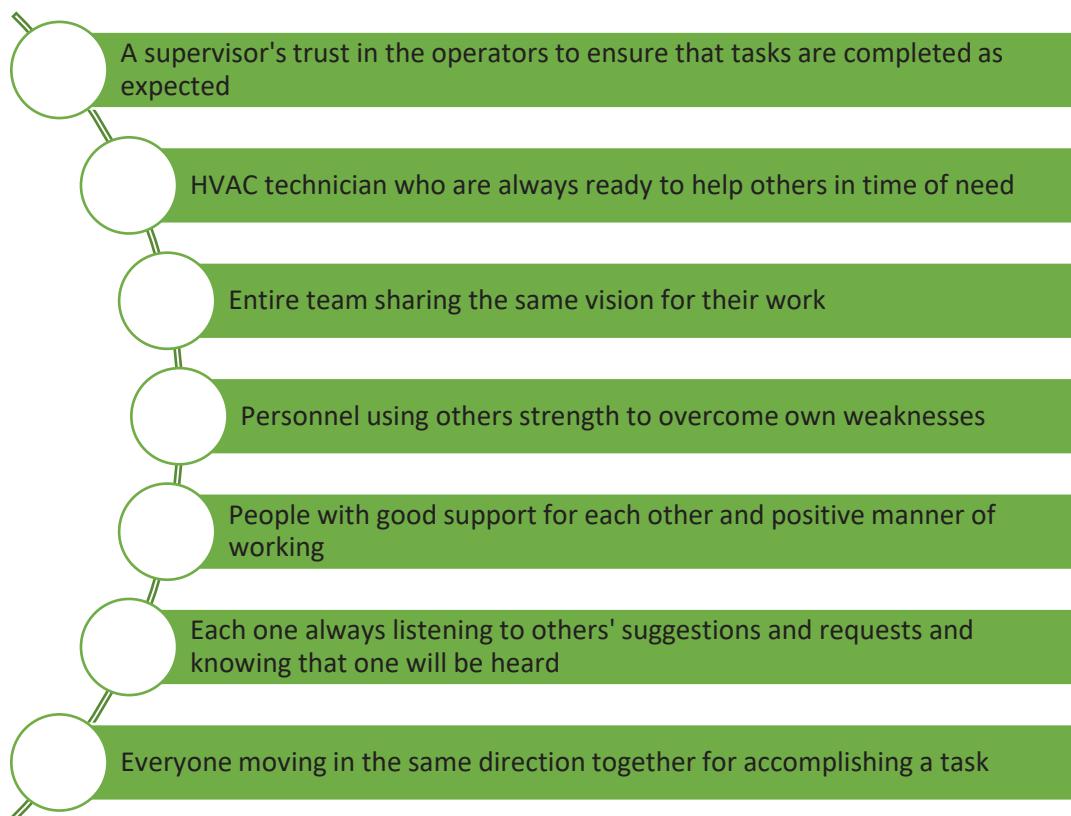


Fig. 2.2.4: Team coordination

To make teamwork effective at workplace, the following points need to be considered:

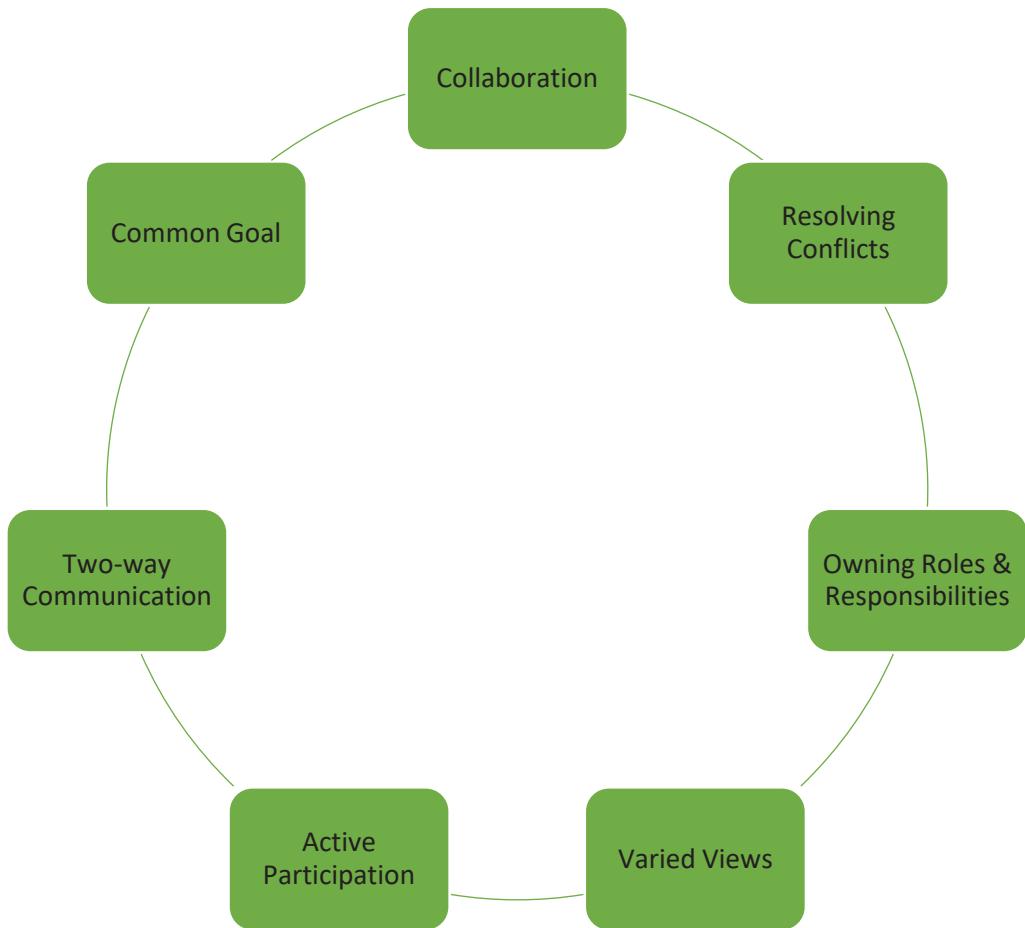


Fig. 2.2.5: Points to be considered for effective teamwork

Role Play

There is an argument going on between two of your colleagues. You found that the situation is getting worse. How will you handle the situation?

UNIT 2.3: Identify the Possible Solutions and Suggest to Client

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Inspect and communicate the issue
2. Diagnose and Identify the issue
3. Explain the solution
4. List the dos and don'ts
5. Perform documentation

2.3.1 Understand Customers' Requirements

Understanding the needs of a customer is one of the foremost parts of an HVAC technician's job role. This includes the following practices:

- Call the customer
- Check time of visiting the location
- Greet the customer and talk politely
- Understand the customer's requirement
- Provide the best possible and cost-effective solution to the customer
- Ensure that the customer is satisfied with the service
- Address the queries and issues raised by the customer

An HVAC technician's job is a customer facing role. The following figure shows the characteristics which every electrician should reflect:

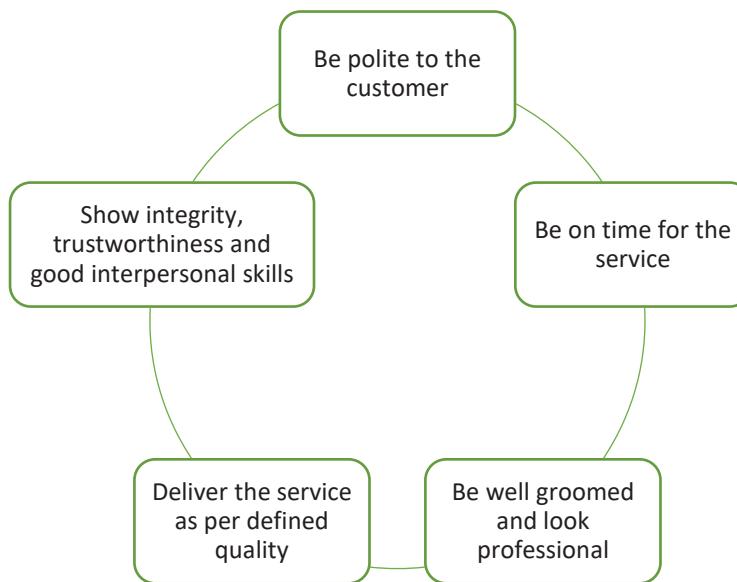


Fig. 2.3.1: Characteristics of HVAC technician

When on a visit to a customer's site, to ensure good service, the customer's requirement should be understood, and a solution should be suggested. The following figure shows the points to be taken care of while communicating with a customer:

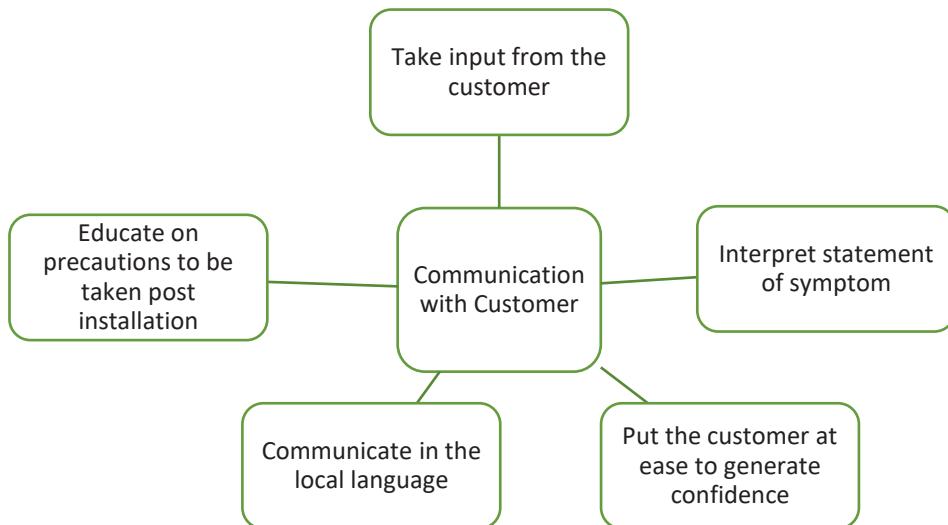


Fig. 2.3.2: Communicating with a customer

Educating and Informing the Customer

Educating a customer about the wiring process is an important aspect of an HVAC technician's job. For the satisfaction of the customer, an HVAC technician should inform the customer about the installation process and other information about material and fittings installed by him/her at the customer's site or premises.

The following figure shows a list of information to be given to the customer:

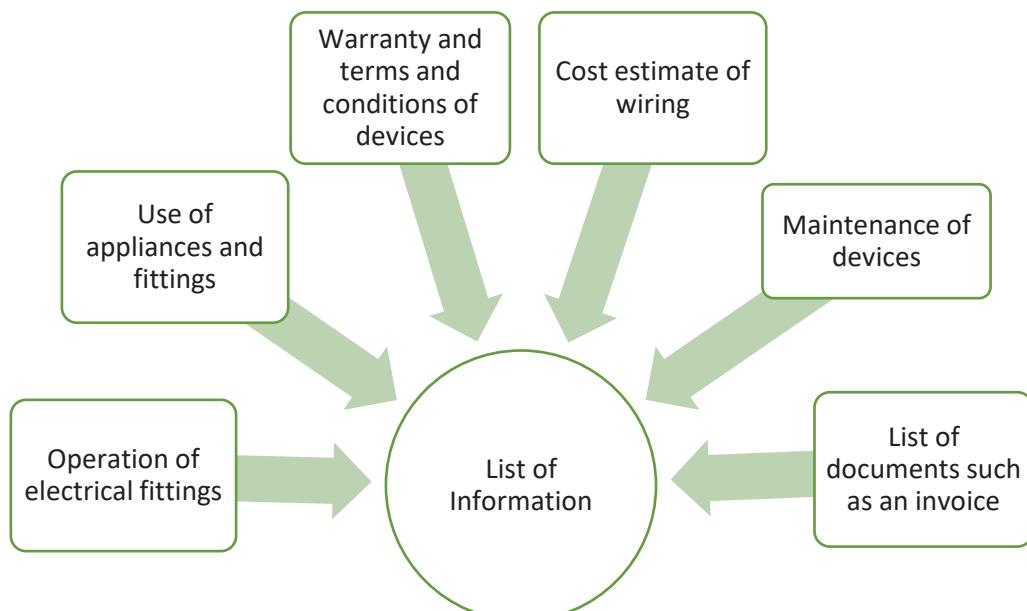


Fig. 2.3.3: List of information

Asking Questions

Asking questions is also a skill required for the role of an HVAC technician. Questions may be asked to the customer to get more details or to be sure of something. An HVAC technician should also ask a customer appropriate questions to analyse the problems faced and seek inputs from them to understand the symptoms.

Warranty Coverage

Warranty coverage is an agreement between the manufacturer and the buyer which assures the customer of getting a free repair service till the mentioned date of warranty.

An HVAC technician is responsible for informing the customer about the replacement or repairing procedure of appliances and he/she should tell the customer about the estimated cost of the repairing or whether the repairing will take place at the service centre.

Suggest a Solution to the Customer

After identifying the issue, an HVAC technician needs to offer solutions to the customer. The HVAC technician should explain all the possible solutions along with the cost associated. The person should then propose the best solution and let the customer decide whether to go ahead with the given solution or not.

The following figure shows the steps involved in offering solutions to a customer:

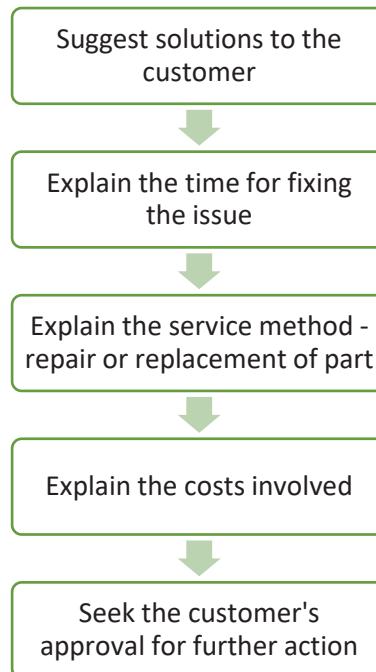


Fig. 2.3.4: Suggesting a solution to the customer for an issue

Escalating Issues

Often, there can be certain issues that need to be resolved at the earliest. The first step in resolving issues is their escalation. HVAC technicians need to communicate with their supervisor/s regarding process issues that might be affecting their performance. The following figure lists some of the issues that need to be escalated to the supervisor as soon as possible:

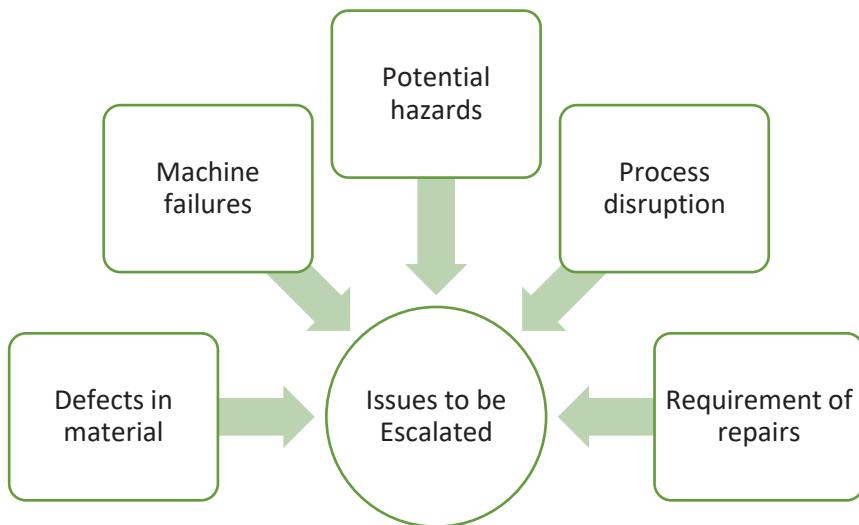


Fig. 2.3.5: Some of the issues that need to be escalated

Personnel issues that are directly related to the job description as well as ones that are not related to work need to be attended by the supervisors. Also, maintenance issues need to be communicated to the maintenance personnel.

The following figure shows process of issue escalation:

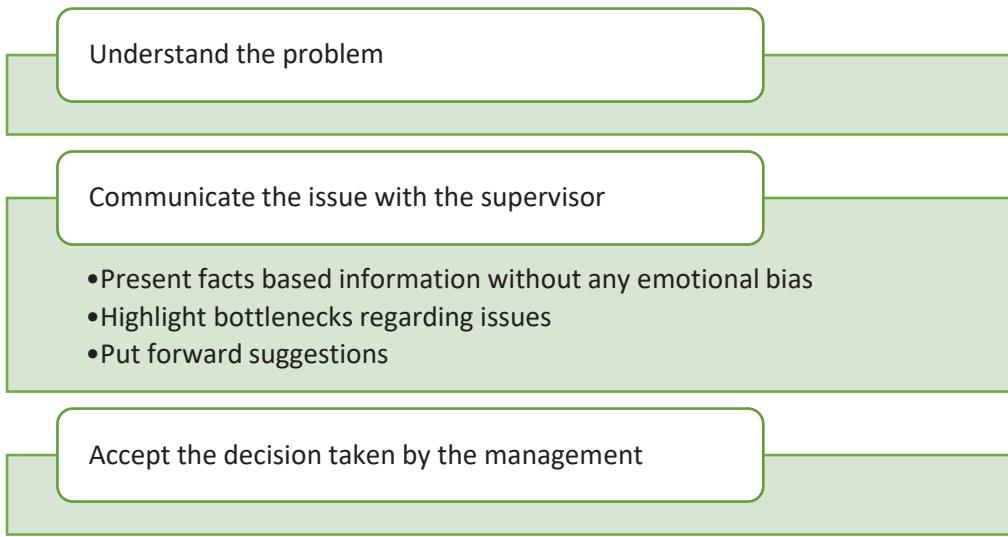


Fig. 2.3.6: Process of issue escalation

The following figure lists some key considerations regarding issue escalation that must be kept in mind while communicating with supervisors:

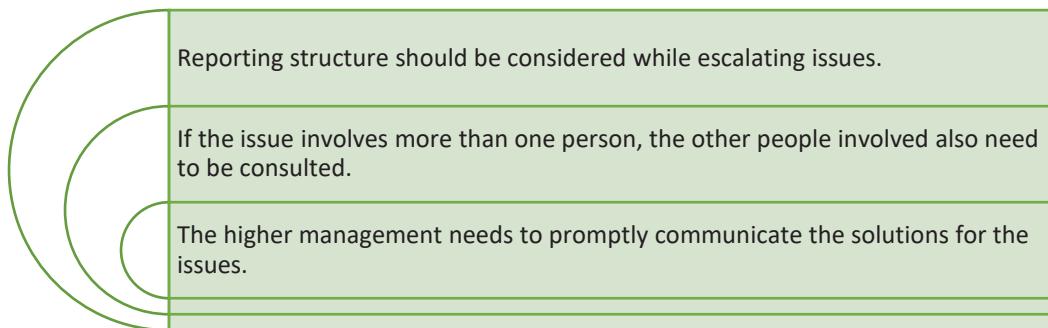


Fig. 2.3.7: Some key considerations regarding issue escalation

Escalating Customer Queries

There may be cases where a customer's request is not closed within the agreed time frame. In such a situation, the electrician should escalate the matter to his superior/ back line support and the escalation manager. The supervisor is responsible for ensuring that all escalated enquiries are dealt with and resolved promptly. However, the electrician should try to exhaust all the options at his/her level before escalating any enquiry to the supervisor.

A customer enquiry should reach the supervisor only if there is a need to oversee the issue from a holistic viewpoint. The supervisor will evaluate the situation, facilitate the issue resolution and act as an advocate on behalf of the customer.

Complaints Escalation Process

An HVAC technician should do everything to resolve an issue at the first instance. To facilitate a fast and efficient resolution of the issues at the first point of contact, a complaint process needs to be designed and followed.

If an issue is unresolved and needs expert guidance, the HVAC technician should clearly explain the escalation options to the customer before proceeding. The following figure shows the steps of a complaint resolution process:

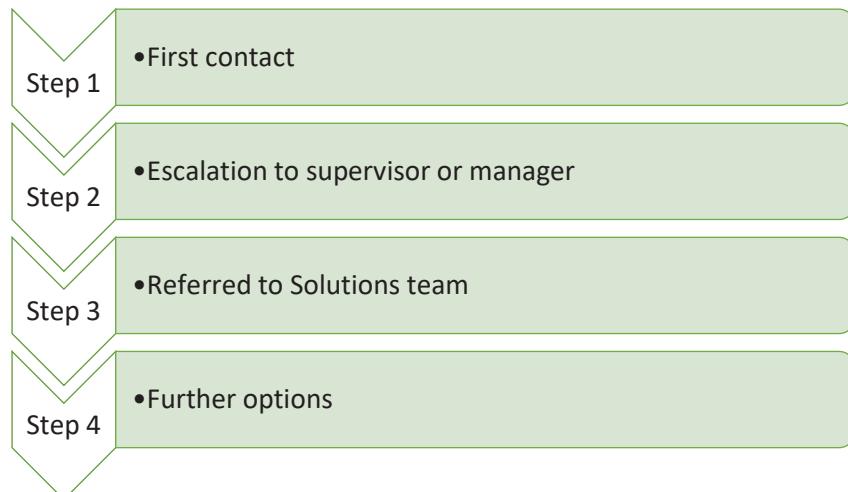


Fig. 2.3.8: A complaint resolution process

Step 1: First Contact

An HVAC technician needs to be empowered to resolve first level complaints and complex issues and make rational customer service decisions.

Step 2: Escalation to a Supervisor or Manager

If an HVAC technician is not able to resolve a complaint, it can be escalated to a supervisor or a manager. The manager will review the problem, respond to the complainant and attempt to resolve the issue to the customer's satisfaction.

In circumstances where the manager is unable to resolve the complaint to the customer's satisfaction, the complaint will be referred to the Solutions team.

Step 3: Referred to Solutions team

The Solutions team will review and try to resolve the issue to the customer's satisfaction in accordance with the industry's code and regulation.

Step 4: Further Options

Most of the complaints can be handled internally by utilizing all possible avenues of resolving the complaint. However, if a customer is still not satisfied with the handling of the complaint, then as a last resort an HVAC technician may seek complaint mediation or further assistance from the supervisor.

2.3.2 Take Feedback from Customer

The last step of understanding customer's concerns is to take feedback from the customer as this is the most important thing for an organization. The procedure as shown in the following figure should be followed:



Fig. 2.3.9: Procedure to be followed for taking customer feedback

The time taken to resolve an issue and the difficulties that a customer encountered while communicating the problem should be understood. The misunderstandings observed during the interaction should be clearly documented.

The methods of interaction and behavioral aspects also need to be considered in drawing conclusions after each task or problem handling routine. Getting honest feedback from the clients helps to improve the organizational functioning.

The HVAC technician can get a feedback form filled by the customer at the facility. The following figure shows a typical template for a customer feedback form:

Customer Feedback Form

Please fill the form. We value your feedback.

Date: _____

Location: _____

Service: Complaint

New Connection

1. How would you rate our service?

Very Good

Good

Poor

2. Did the technician come with all the necessary tools and equipment to do the job?

Yes

No

3. Did the technician behave politely with you?

Yes

No

4. Did the wireman have knowledge of the work to be done?

Yes

No

5. Any suggestion which you would like to share.

Fig. 2.3.10: A sample customer feedback form

Role Play

You are an HVAC technician. You just received a phone call from customer reporting to escalate the issue directly to the supervisor as the HVAC system is not working properly post 1 hour of installation. How should the situation be handled?

UNIT 2.4: Plan Work Schedule

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. List the points to understand the work plan
2. List the ways to ensure quality and timely completion of work
3. Describe how to achieve targets
4. Identify safety standards to be followed at workplace
5. Achieve zero defect as per company's standards

2.4.1 Quality and Timely Completion of Work

A technician can maintain quality and achieve timely completion of work in the following ways:

- Ensure whatever work is done is as per the guidelines and standard of the company
- Plan and organize the work for the day
- Follow the plan
- Inform the supervisor in case of any deviation or emergency

A few simple principles, if adhered to, can ensure production of quality work. As an HVAC technician, maintenance of quality and timely completion of work can be done in the following ways:

- Ensure that work is done is as per the guidelines and standard of the company.
- Plan and organize the day to day activities of production depending upon the instruction given by supervisor.
- Follow the proposed plan of action.
- Inform the supervisor in case of any potential hazards.
- Follow guidelines of job instructions or work manuals.
- Work to ensure quality of finished product.

The HVAC technician would get a job sheet or work allocation from the supervisor. The supervisor would also share a plan of action with the HVAC technician to ensure adherence to timelines and quality for the work assigned and an explanation if the target is not met.

The following figure highlights the points which help an HVAC technician in understanding the plan to achieve 100 percent quality standards and timely completion of work:



Fig. 2.4.1: Achieving quality and timely completion of work

2.4.2 Meet the Targets

Just like any other employee of an organization, meeting the targets set by the supervisor is very important. An HVAC technician needs to be clear about the goals and visions of the organization to achieve targets and quality in work. The following figure shows the key points which will help an HVAC technician to meet the expected targets and quality:

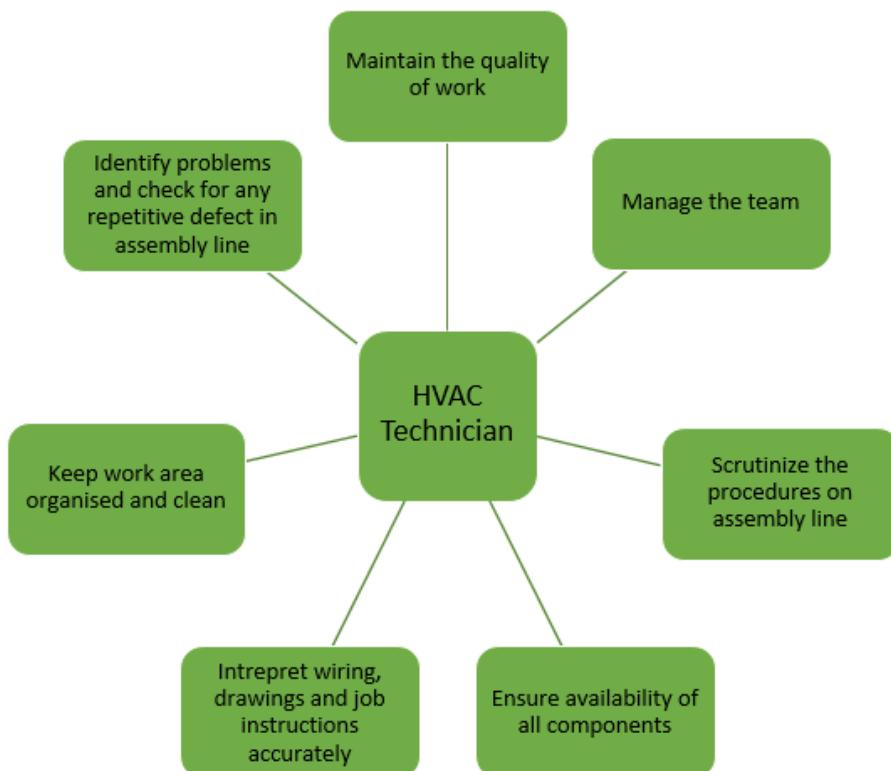


Fig. 2.4.2: Key points to remember for meeting targets

The quality of work needs to be maintained at all times in compliance with the referral handbook of the company. Making sure that individual roles and responsibilities are understood by the personnel is vital. Timely check of the machinery and software systems needs to be done to avoid any bottlenecks in achieving weekly or monthly targets.

2.4.3 Achieving Zero Defects

Zero defects in components can be achieved in the ways as listed in the following figure:

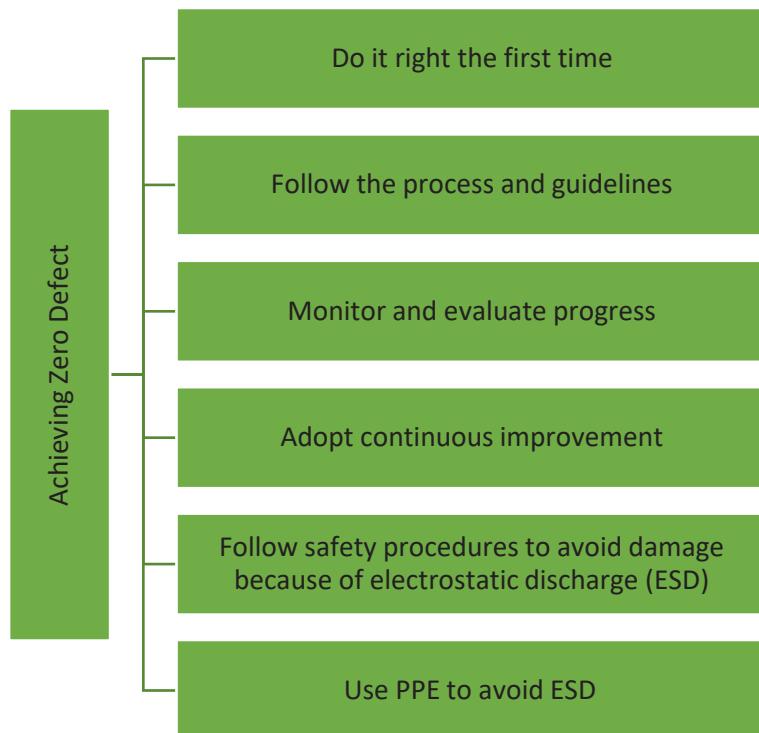


Fig. 2.4.3: Measures to achieve zero defect in components

2.4.4 Take Feedback from Customer

The supervisor shares a plan of action with the technicians to ensure adherence to timelines and quality for the work assigned. Therefore, a supervisor's responsibilities includes the following:

- Planning the task
- Getting the task done from others
- Organizing and controlling work for efficiency
- Looking after interpersonal issues

The following figure highlights the points which help the technician in understanding the plan to achieve 100% quality and timely completion of work:

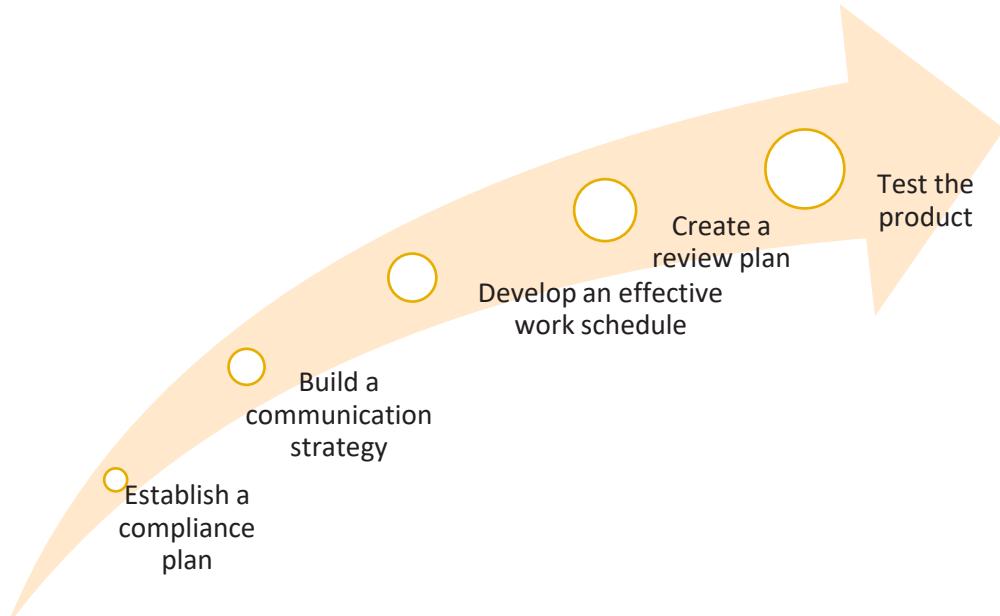


Fig. 2.4.4: Achieving quality and timely completion of work

2.4.5 Spot Process Disruptions and Delays

Delays and disruptions are common while working as a technician. Certain guidelines must be followed to resolve issues in case of disruptions and delays. The following figure lists the general guidelines to follow in such cases:

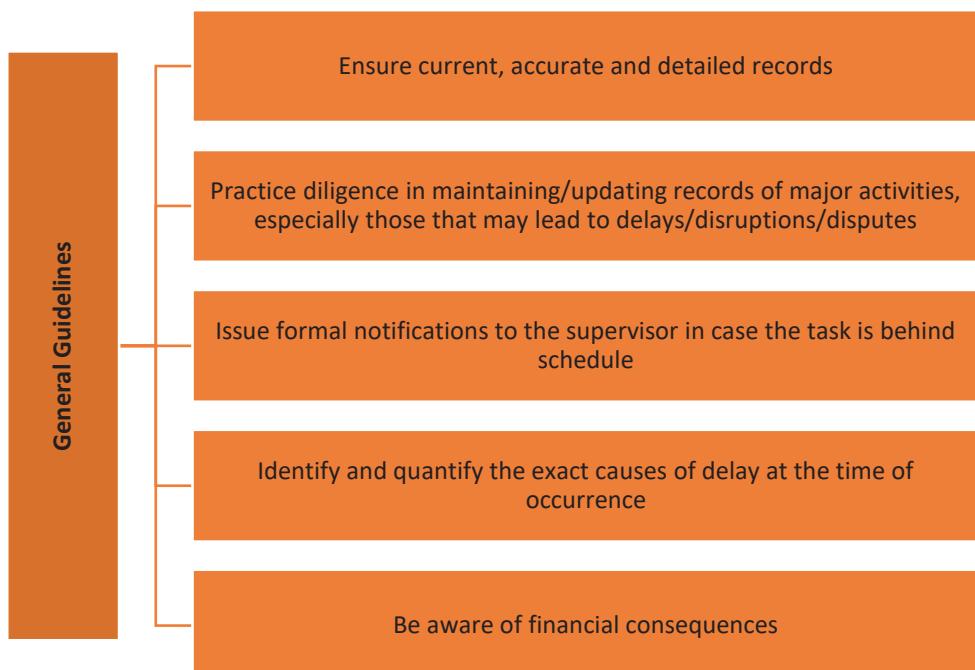


Fig. 2.4.5: General guidelines to follow in case of disruptions and delays

The following figure highlights the points which an employee, a technician, must abide by while interacting with the supervisor:

- Plan and organize the assigned work
- Complete the assigned task
- Work as per the guidelines and targets
- Follow the chain of command
- Report any threat or discrepancy

Fig. 2.4.6: Points to adhere to while interacting with a supervisor

UNIT 2.5: Analyse the Drawings and Layouts

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Identify the HVAC plan symbols
2. Analyse the HVAC plan drawings and layout of site

2.5.1 HVAC plan Symbols

The following table represents the various HVAC Equipment Symbols:

Symbol	Equipment it Represents
	The Pump is a mechanical device using suction or pressure to raise or move liquids, compress gases, or force air into inflatable objects such as tires.
	The Silencer is a device fixed to the exhaust of a motor vehicle to reduce engine noise.
	The Condenser is an apparatus or container for condensing vapour into liquid. It is also known as Heat transfer.
	The Drier is a kind of substance or device to accelerate drying or extract moisture.
	The Muffler is a device used to reduce the noise of an engine or deaden the sound of an instrument.
	The Filter is a porous device for removing impurities or solid particles from a liquid or gas that passes through it.
	The Nozzle is a cylindrical or round spout at the end of a pipe, hose, or tube used to control the direction or the velocity of gas or liquid flow.

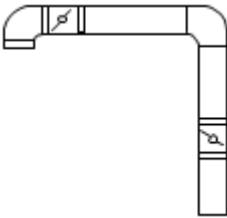
Symbol	Equipment it Represents
	The Pipeline is a long pipe, typically underground, for transporting oil, gas, etc.
	The Chiller is a machine for removing heat from a liquid through a circle of vapour compression, absorption and refrigeration.

Table 2.5.1: Symbols and their representation

The following table represents the various HVAC Ductwork Symbols:

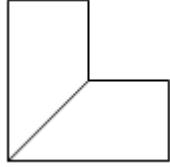
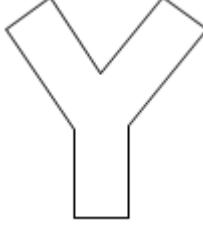
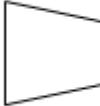
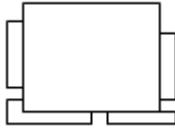
Symbol	Description
	The Bend is a curve part in a road, river, path, or racing circuit.
	The Y junction generally has 2 arms of equal size.
	The Transition is the process or a period of changing from one state or condition to another.
	The VAV box is short for Variable Air Volume box, which is a type of HVAC system.

Table 2.5.2: Ductwork symbols and their description

The following table represents the various HVAC Sensor Symbols:

Symbol	Description
	The Temperature shape shows a kind of device to measure temperature.
	The Humidity shape shows a kind of device to measure humidity.
	The Timer shape shows a device to count time.
	The Air quality is a device to detecting air quality.

Table 2.5.3: Sensor symbols and their description

2.5.2 HVAC Layout

HVAC layout are deigned and created by HVAC Engineers. You as an HVAC technician, you should be able to under the drawings and layout of the site where the HVAC system are being installed. Following is an example of a HVAC layout of an auditorium.

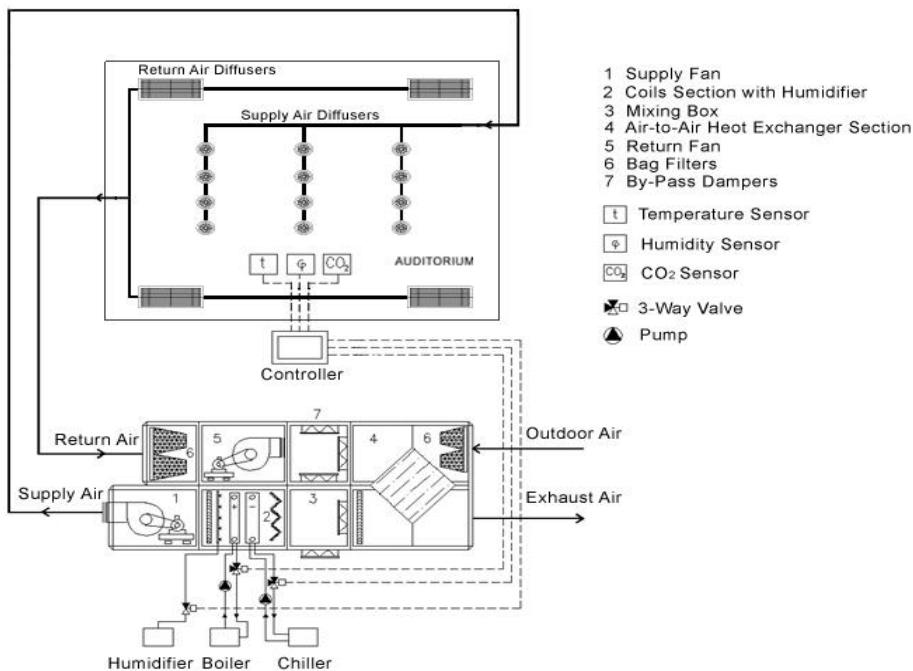
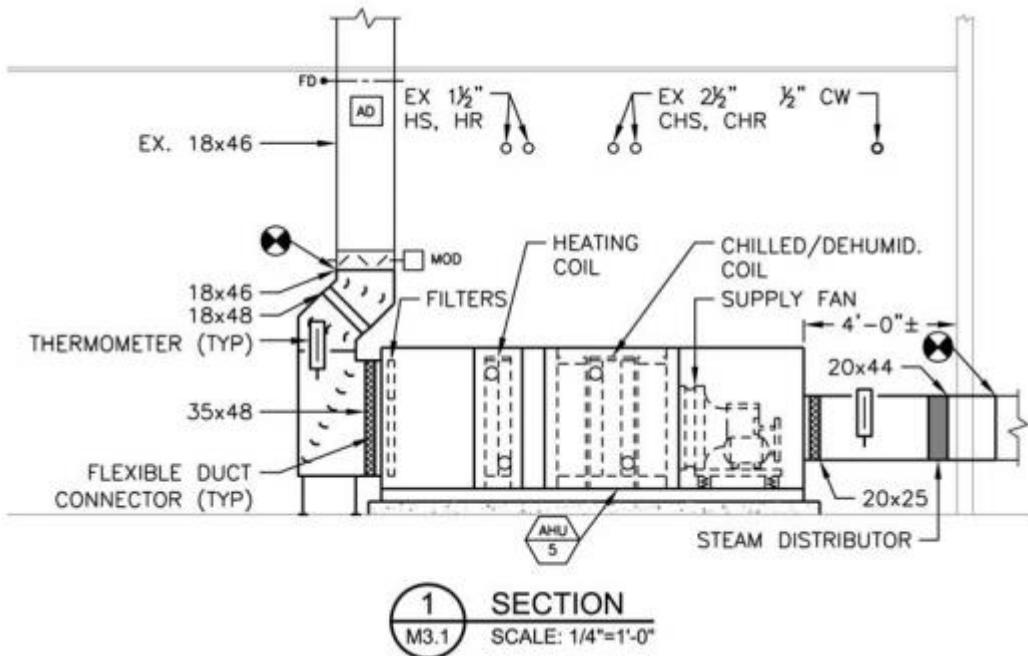


Fig. 2.5.1: HVAC layout of an auditorium

The space reflected in the above layout is an auditorium, located at the ground floor of a 5 storied office. The auditorium is air conditioned by using a single-duct, single-zone, constant volume, all-air HVAC system. The general layout of the HVAC system's components is shown in the Fig. 2.5.1.

Exercise

Explain the following section drawing of an AHU.





3. Service of an HVAC System

Unit 3.1 – Service and Maintenance of HVAC System

Unit 3.2 – Cleaning Equipment

Unit 3.3 – Check Water Pipelines and Pumps for any Damage

Unit 3.4 – Fix Faults in Electrical Control Panels and Supply Boxes

Unit 3.5 – Prepare Maintenance and Service Records



Key Learning Outcomes



At the end of this module, you will be able to:

1. Comply with the service and maintenance documents of HVAC system
2. Prepare maintenance and service records
3. Perform maintenance of a cooling tower and chiller
4. Use appropriate tools and equipment for maintenance and service
5. Use proper equipment to clean duct work, AHU and FCU
6. Analyse and check water pipelines and pumps for any damage
7. Devise solutions to fix faults in electrical control panels and supply boxes

UNIT 3.1: Service and Maintenance of HVAC System

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Explain the importance of servicing and maintaining HVAC system
2. Identify the importance of complying with service and maintenance documents
3. Identify the best practices of servicing and maintaining an HVAC system
4. Identify and update the various maintenance and service records

3.1.1 Importance of Servicing and Maintaining an HVAC System

Regular servicing and maintenance of any electronic component increases its performance and efficiency. Similarly, an HVAC system also requires regular servicing and maintenance. It not only increases its efficiency but also increases the life-span of its components and can also save from any big faulty disaster. A well-maintained HVAC system has the following advantages:

- Improves Air Circulation
- Enhance Air Quality
- Long life of spare parts/components used
- Reduce chances of HVAC system breakdown

Maintenance of an HVAC system involves the following tasks:

Visual Inspection of complete system

Inspect and Change Filters (If required)

Clean and Remove Dust and Debris

Check and Condensate Drains (pipes)

Check Thermostat Setting

Check Electric Connections and Voltage

Lubricate Moving Parts

Inspect Exhaust Outlets

Check all Connections

Check Refrigerant Levels

Check all Components for Any Rust /Damage

Check for Any Leakage

Check for Air Flow and Quality

Clean Ducts and Vents

Clean Cooling Towers, Chillers, Air Handling Units (AHU)and Fan Coil Unit (FCU)

Fig. 3.1.1: Task list for HVAC Maintenance

3.1.2 Maintenance of a Cooling Tower

The cooling towers are more prone to pollutants like dirt, pollen, dust, insects and other debris. These pollutants can lead to corrosion and premature basin failure or growth of microorganisms like algae which can lead to health risks. Therefore, the occupational safety and health administration technical manual states that the cleaning and chlorination of the cooling tower should be conducted twice a year. Following figure represents the cooling tower cleaning protocol:

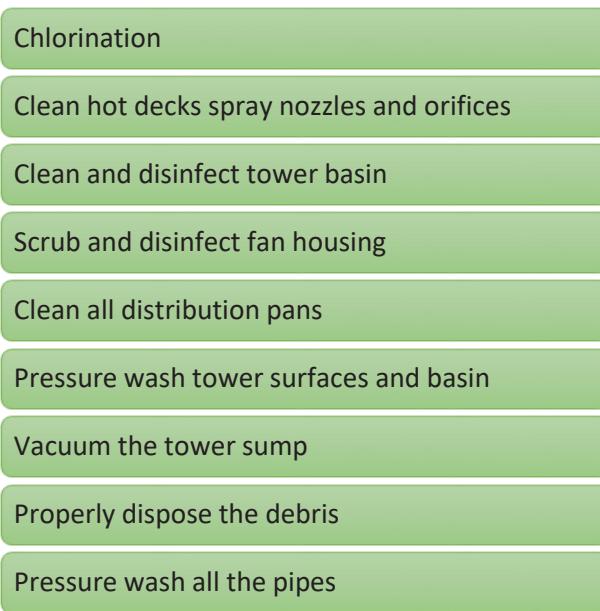


Fig. 3.1.2: Cooling Tower Cleaning Protocol

The inside environment of a functional cooling tower is like a hurricane. The regular inspection and maintenance result in best HVAC system performance.

- **Water Treatment:** An effective water treatment removes harmful bacteria and controls biological contamination. A regular chemical treatment/chlorination is recommended, which controls biological organisms, scale, and corrosion.
- **Prevent scale deposits:** The water that evaporates from the cooling tower leaves behind the minerals dissolved in it as scale deposits on the surface. These scale deposits obstructs the heat transfer from the water to the air thus reducing the effectiveness. To prevent scale deposit, adequate water treatment is recommended.
- **Clean clogged spray nozzles:** There is a chance that the micro-organisms like algae and sediment collects in the water basin and excess solid gets clog in the spray nozzles that can cause uneven water distribution and a result reduces evaporation. Proper water treatment can resolve this problem of clogged strainers. Professional Kits are available that can be used to replace older distribution nozzles.
- **Ensure Adequate Airflow:** Inadequate airflow through the cooling tower reduces the transfer of heat from the water to the air. Inadequate airflow can be caused due to the following reasons:
 - Debris at the inlets/outlets of the tower
 - Loose fan and motor mountings
 - Poor motor and fan alignment

- Poor gearbox maintenance
- Improper fan pitch

This can finally lead to failure of the fan motor. Thus it is important to ensure adequate airflow in the cooling tower. Regular cleaning helps avoiding such system failure.

- **Ensure Adequate Pump Performance:** A cooling tower use pumps to transport water over the tubes for evaporative cooling. Thus, proper water flow is important to achieve optimum heat transfer. Any kind of fault such as loose connection, damage, faulty bearings, cavitation, clogged strainers, excessive vibration can result in reduced water flow, and finally reducing the efficiency, and premature equipment failure.

Maintenance Schedule for Cooling Tower

Description	Comments	Maintenance Frequency
Cooling tower use/sequencing	Turn on/sequence unnecessary cooling towers	Daily
Overall visual inspection	Complete overall visual inspection to be sure all equipment is operating and safety systems are in place	Daily
Fan motor condition	Check the condition of the fan motor through temperature or vibration analysis and compare to baseline values	Weekly
Clean suction screen	Physically clean screen of all debris	Weekly
Operate make-up water float switch	Operate switch manually to ensure proper operation	Weekly
Vibration	Check for excessive vibration in motors, fans, and pumps	Weekly
Check tower structure	Check for loose fill, connections, leaks, etc.	Weekly
Check belts and pulleys	Adjust all belts and pulleys	Weekly
Test water samples	Test for proper concentrations of dissolved solids, and chemistry. Adjust blowdown and chemicals as necessary. Perform weekly for open towers and monthly for closed systems.	Weekly (Open) Monthly (Closed)
Check lubrication	Assure that all bearings are lubricated per the manufacturer's recommendation	Monthly
Check motor supports and fan blades	Check for excessive wear and secure fastening	Monthly
Motor alignment	Aligning the motor coupling allows for efficient torque transfer	Monthly
Check drift eliminators, louvers, and fill	Look for proper positioning and scale build up	Monthly
Inspect nozzles for clogging	Make sure water is flowing through nozzles in the hot well	Annually
Clean tower	Remove all dust, scale, and algae from tower basin, fill, and spray nozzles	Annually
Check bearings	Inspect bearings and drive belts for wear. Adjust, repair, or replace as necessary.	Annually
Motor condition	Checking the condition of the motor through temperature or vibration analysis assures long life	Annually

Source: OHSA (Occupational Health and Safety Association)

Table 3.1.1: Maintenance schedule

3.1.3 Maintenance of a Chiller

To improve the performance and reducing the operating cost of chiller, the following maintenance tasks should be followed:

- **Operate multiple chillers for peak efficiency:** The HVAC system with two or more chillers can save energy by meeting the building loads to the most efficient combination.
- **Raise chilled-water temperature:** An increase in the temperature of the chilled water supplied to the building's air handlers improves its efficiency. Establish A chilled-water reset schedule should be establish in such a way that it can adjust the chilled-water temperature automatically with the change in outside-air temperature.
- **Reduce condenser water temperature:** Reducing the temperature of the water returning from the cooling tower to the chiller condenser by 2-3°F reduces chiller energy use by 2-3%. The temperature set point for the water leaving the cooling tower should be as low as the chiller manufacturer will allow for water entering the condenser.
- **Purge air from refrigerant:** Air trapped in the refrigerant loop increases pressure at the compressor discharge. This increases the work required from the compressor. Newer chillers have automatic air purgers that have run-time meters. Daily or weekly tracking of run time helps tracking any leakage.
- **Verify Performance of hot-gas bypass and unloader:** These are most commonly found on reciprocating compressors to control capacity. Make sure they operate properly.
- **Maintain refrigerant level:** To maintain a chiller's efficiency, regular perform the following checks:
 - Check the refrigerant sight-glass
 - Check Superheat and sub-cooling temperature readings and maintain as per manufacturer's guidelines

By performing these checks, you can detect the low-level and high-level refrigerant conditions. Both these conditions are not good for chiller as they reduce the capacity and efficiency of the chiller.

- **Maintain a daily log:** It is best practice to maintain a daily log of temperatures, fluid levels, pressures, flow rates, and motor amperage. These readings help understanding the functioning of chiller and troubleshooting problems. Now-a-days, chillers comes with an automatically save logs of these measurements in their on-board control system, which may be able to communicate directly with the DDC.

Maintenance Schedule for Chiller

DESCRIPTION	COMMENTS	MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY
Fill out daily log	Check all setpoints for proper setting and function. Make sure there are no unusual sounds and the space temperature is acceptable.	Daily (4x)
Chiller use/sequencing	Turn off or sequence unnecessary chillers	Daily
Check chilled water reset settings and function	Check settings for approved sequence of operation at the beginning of each cooling season	Annually
Check chiller lockout setpoint	Check settings for approved sequence of operation at the beginning of each cooling season	Annually
Clean evaporator and condenser tubes	Indicated when pressure drop across the barrel (tube bundle) exceeds manufacturer's recommendations, but at least annually.	Annually
Verify motor amperage load limit	Motor amperage should not exceed manufacturer's specification	Annually
Compressor motor and assembly	Conduct vibration analysis: Check all alignments to specifications. Check all seals. Lubricate where necessary.	Annually
Compressor oil system	Perform analysis on oil and filter. Change if necessary. Check oil pump and seals Check oil heater and thermostat Check all strainers, valves, etc.	Annually
Electrical connections	Check all electrical connections and terminals for full contact and tightness	Annually
Check refrigerant condition	Add refrigerant if low. Record amounts and address leakage problems.	Annually
Check for condenser and evaporator tube corrosion and clean as needed.	Indications include: poor water quality, excessive fouling, and age of chiller. Eddy current testing may be done to assess tube condition.	As needed

Table 3.1.2: Maintenance schedule for chiller

Activity



Create your own HVAC service and maintenance checklist and submit it for evaluation.

(The aim of this activity is to analyse if the tasks and activities needed for maintenance of an HVAC system is well understood or not.)

Equipment required:

1. HVAC equipment/system, if available
2. Notepad & pen

Time required: 15-20 minutes

UNIT 3.2: Cleaning Equipment

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Identify the various cleaning equipment
2. Identify how to clean AHU

3.2.1 Equipment used for cleaning and maintaining

The following table represents the equipment to clean duct:

Equipment	Image	Description
Chemical Fogger		It is used for disinfectant application.
Duct Cleaning Vacuum	 	<p>It is used to clean the ducts and vents. It has two-directional rotating brush that safely removes the debris. The dual vacuum motor pulls the hose into disposable vacuum bag.</p> <p>These come in different models.</p>

Equipment	Image	Description
Disinfectant and Low Toxicity Duct Fungicide		These are sprayed into the ducts to kill any residual mold, fungi, bacteria, algae etc.
Rotatory Duct Cleaner		These are used to remove any harmful deposits in the duct. These can be easily used in round, rectangular or spiral ducts.

Table 3.2.1: Equipment and their use

The following figure represents the steps involved in cleaning the ducts and vents:

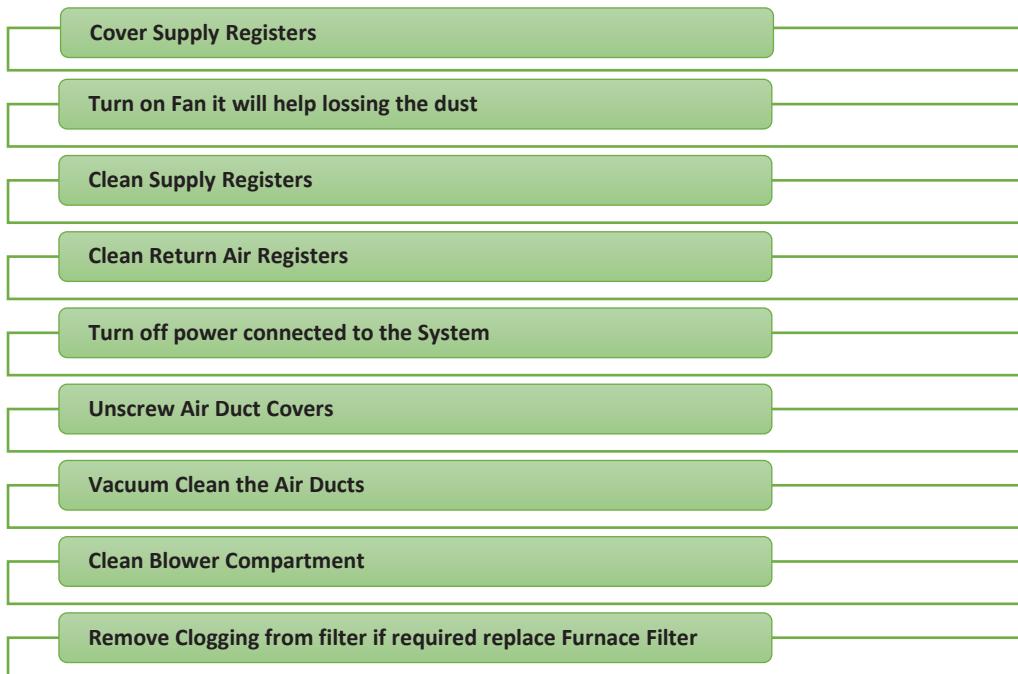


Fig. 3.2.1 Steps to clean duct and vent

3.2.2 Cleaning/Servicing AHU

It is recommended to clean and take preventive maintenance of Air Handling Units. Following are some simple cleaning/servicing steps:

- Clean all the filters using spray shower or in case of big unit specialised AHU Filter cleaning machines are available which cleans 4-5 filters in one time.
- Clean and Drain condenser. Use any disinfectant if required.
- Lubricate the motor, blower bearing, pumps by grease
- Clean the AHU coils and straighten coils with a fine comb
- Check and clean the motor belt and pulley. If required replace them.
- Inspect all the wiring and electric connections for damage or loose connections
- Check all the unit's bypass valves

Activity



Activity 1 – The aim is to help you analyse the requirement of the equipment and their usage for cleaning and maintenance of an HVAC system.

Task 1: Trainer will demonstrate the usage of various cleaning equipment available in lab. Note down the observation.

Task 2: Demonstrate the usage of any equipment as directed by the trainer.

Equipment required:

1. Cleaning equipment
2. HVAC system
3. Notepad & pen

Time required: 30-40 minutes

Activity 2 – The aim is to fix/troubleshoot a fault in the pipeline.

Trainer will demonstrate the procedure to fix leakage in water pipeline.

Equipment required:

1. HVAC pipe with a fault/leakage
2. Cleaning equipment
3. HVAC system

Time required: 60 minutes

UNIT 3.3: Check Water Pipelines and Pumps for any Damage

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Perform Pressure test to check pipelines.
2. Check pumps for any damage

3.3.1 Pressure Test

For efficient working and high performance of the HVAC system, as a HVAC technician it is your responsibility to strive for NO LEAKAGE in pipes or any other component of the HVAC system.

Pressure Test is the most recommended test for piping system. This test helps avoiding any failure due to improper/inadequate joining/fitting of piping. Also, it helps in detecting any leakage in the pipe lines.

Checking the Process pipes

1. Ensure all the piping loops are closed
2. Air pump the system slowly starting with 60 psi.
3. Let it stand for fifteen minutes or as recommended by the manufacturer's guidelines.
4. Start increasing the pressure upto 125 psi.
5. Once the buildings main sections have been tested, individual coils should be pressurized with air at 125 psi.

Once the process pipes are checked then pressure testing is performed to check all the water distribution, supply system including the gas pipes.

All such tests are done under the supervision of the senior authorities and are properly documented and signed by the signatory authorities.

Following is the format to record the pressure testing result:

Name of Piping Systems' Team Member performing test _____

Date test was performed: _____ Job # _____ Job Name: _____

Duration of testing time: _____ Job Location: _____

SYSTEM TYPE	COMPONENT	TEST MEDIUM AND PRESSURE RATING		DURATION
		Air @ 125 psi	Hydro (water) @ 125 psi	
HVAC, process piping	All piping	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	One hour minimum Two hours minimum
Gas, low pressure	All piping	3 psi	<input type="checkbox"/>	10 minutes minimum
Gas, high pressure	All Piping	<u>Determined by Inspector:</u> Recorded on: (check off) Gauge <input type="checkbox"/> Graph <input type="checkbox"/>	<u>Determined by pressure available on job-site:</u> _____ hours (not less than one hour for each 100 ft. of pipe)	
Plumbing	Underground	10 feet head pressure	<input type="checkbox"/>	15 minute minimum
	In wall rough	10 feet head pressure	<input type="checkbox"/>	15 minute minimum
FINISH PLUMBING:				
	Water piping, hot	Air @ 125 psi	<input type="checkbox"/>	15 minute minimum
	Water piping, cold	Air@ 125 psi	<input type="checkbox"/>	15 minute minimum

Description of piping and/or components tested including location:

PRINT CLIENT/INSPECTOR NAME: _____

Sign Name and Date of client's representative who witnessed test:

If system was tested in sections, what is the status of any blanks or valves used?

Pan Blanks	Installed	Removed
Location:	_____	_____

Valves	Closed	Opened
Location:	_____	_____

Fig. 3.3.1 Format for Pressure Testing Form

3.3.2 Checking Pumps for Damage

Pumps are one the most important part of an HVAC system as they keep functioning the system efficiently. To keep them running properly, it is advised to do keep checking the pumps regularly and do the needful maintenance as and when required.

Following are few pump maintenance checkpoints that should be followed:

1. Create Maintenance Schedule: Every pump comes with a manufacturer's maintenance and cleaning guidelines. Accordingly, a maintenance schedule should be created. While creating a maintenance schedule do keep in mind the time at which maintenance work can be done so that it does not impact much to the people inside the building. As the HVAC system will be shut down during maintenance work. Secondly, decide the frequency i.e. after how much interval the next maintenance should be scheduled. All these should be recorded in Maintenance Log as per prescribed format.

2. Keep track of pump during operation hours also. When the pumps are running check for any leakage, unusual sound or vibration/odour. Note all the observation in Maintenance Log.
3. While inspecting the pumps for maintenance, do the following mechanical checks:
 - a. Mounting Points
 - b. Leakage
 - c. Loose Connections
 - d. Rust/Corrosion nearby inlet or outlet pipes attached to the pumps.
4. Lubricate bearings as per manufacturer's guideline. Do not over grease it, it may damage the bearing.
5. Check for damaged hoses or seals and replace immediately.

Example: Trouble Shooting Heat Pump

Problem	Possible Reason	Possible Solutions
Heat Pump: Icing up in Winter	Defrost Mode not working	Solution 1: Check for Fan Motor Solution 2: Check for Refrigerant Solution 3: Check for any blockage in outdoor unit. Solution 4: Check for water leakage

Activity



Create a presentation of various possible problems that may occur in a heat pump. Write the possible reasons and solutions. Present your presentation in the class.

(The aim of this activity is to analyse if you have understood the issues, and their possible resolutions, for an HVAC system.)

Equipment required:

1. Laptop/desktop with Internet connection
2. MS Office for PowerPoint presentation
3. HVAC system with a working heat pump (or a faulty one)

Time required: 60 minutes

UNIT 3.4: Fix Faults in Electrical Control Panels and Supply Boxes

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

- Repair faults in electrical control panels and supply boxes

3.4.1 Troubleshooting Electrical Control Panels

Electrical control panels are designed and used to control mechanical equipment. Each one is designed for a specific equipment arrangement and includes devices that allow an operator to control specified equipment.

HVAC control panels are the system that controls temperature and air in the given environment. An HVAC control panel has the following components:

- Terminal block assembly:** It is used to connect PLC modules to ventilation equipment
- PLC (Programmable logic controller):** It adjusts the temperature by triggering relays installed in the HVAC machinery.
- 24 VAC Transformer:** It provides the power for the relay modules.
- 24 VDC Power supply:** It provides power to the Analog Input and Analog Output Modules, the HVAC Control Panel Touch Screen, and the humidity, pressure and temperature sensors.
- Main Circuit Breaker (MCB):** It breaks/interrupt the current flow of electricity as a fault is detected.

Possible Faults	Possible Reason	Possible Solution
Switch Disconnect or Fuse Burning	Over Current and Short Circuit	Check the fuses continuity with a Multi Meter. Replace the Fuse with same rated Current and Voltage
MCB tripping	Short Circuited Current	Rectify the cause that produced the tripping. Once the cause is rectified Switch on the MCB and check.
Relays not working	Faulty Coil or No Power Supply or got disconnected	Check the power Supply voltage, Continuity between contacts, wiring faulty.

Table 3.4.1: Possible faults, their reasons and solutions

Repairing a Thermostat

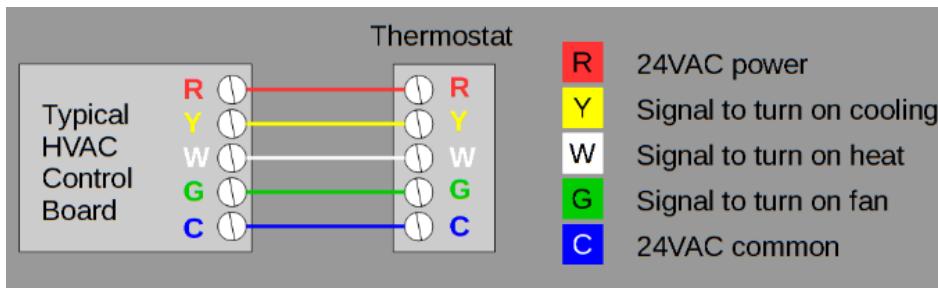


Fig. 3.4.1: Thermostat

Thermostat, located behind the control panel, has a special sensing bulb connected to it to sense temperature controlled by thermostat. It extends from the thermostat to area of the evaporator coil. A field technician should follow the steps shown in the following figure to service a thermostat:

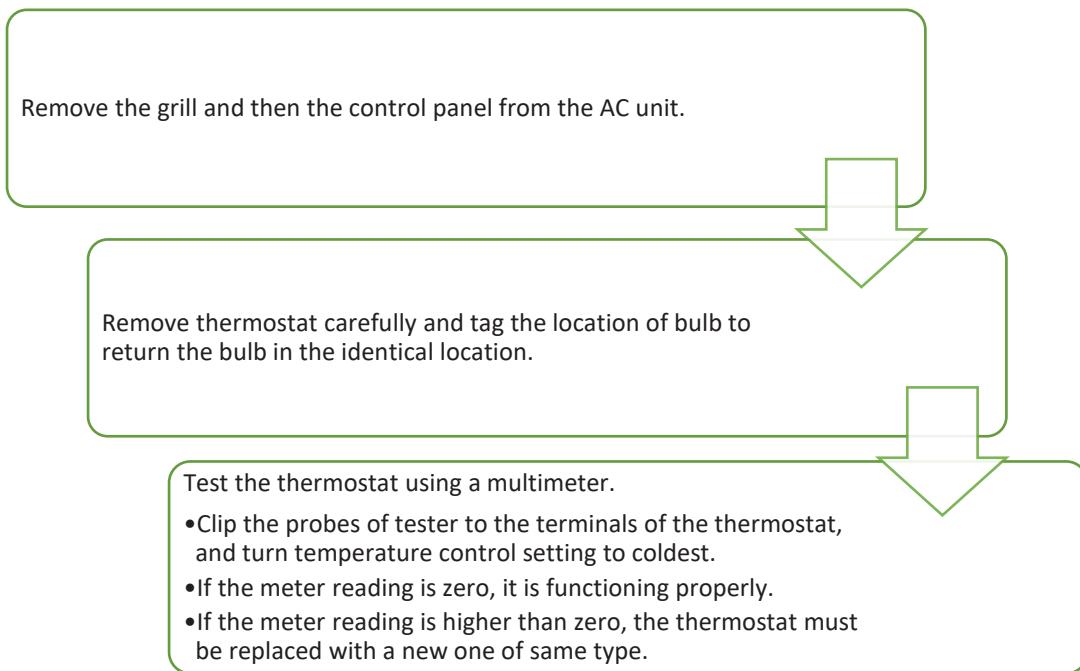


Fig. 3.4.2: Steps for servicing a thermostat

Demonstration

Trainer will demonstrate the functioning of electrical control panel using a video. Note down your observations.

Activity



You will be provided a non-working electrical control panel by the trainer. You need to perform the following tasks:

- Identify its different components.
- Draw, label and explain all the components of electrical control panel in your notebook.

(The aim of this activity is to analyse if you have understood the issues, and their possible resolutions, for the electrical control panel of an HVAC system.)

Equipment required:

1. Dysfunctional Electrical control panel
2. Notepad and pen
3. HVAC system

Time required: 60 minutes

UNIT 3.5: Prepare Maintenance and Service Records

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Explain maintenance schedules
 2. Recognize importance of documentation

3.5.1 Maintenance Schedule

Maintenance schedule is vital for keeping records of servicing, repairing and performing preventive maintenance. The HVAC technician should maintain service records and next servicing schedules to be inform the customer about the maintenance of the components at the facility. The HVAC technician needs to perform hardware and software maintenance.

The following image shows a sample maintenance schedule report:

Fig. 3.5.1: Sample maintenance schedule report

Software Maintenance

A HVAC technician needs to update the software version. He/she should record the expiry date of software and after expiry date install new one with proper licence agreement.

Hardware Maintenance

The HVAC technician should assess the condition of hardware components and upgrade it if required. He/she should be aware of the compatibility issue. The HVAC technician also needs to maintain the warranty details of the components. If the warranty period is going to expire, he/she should communicate that with the customer and ask for any extended warranty he needs.

In this case, there are two ways:

- The customer can ask for extending the warranty period.
- The customer doesn't want to extend it. If there is any problem, he will buy a new one.

The HVAC technician needs to communicate about the above two ways and then tell the details of further procedure.

The following image shows a sample maintenance requirement form:

The screenshot shows a Windows application window titled "Enter Maintenance Requirements". The window is divided into several sections:

- Equipment Unit ID:** Contains fields for "Internal Control No." and "Mfr. Serial No."
- Equipment Unit Description:** Contains fields for "Name", "Brand", "Model", "Capacity", "Classification", and "Unit Location".
- Maintenance:** Contains fields for "Start Date" (set to 10/24/2008), "Starting Usage" (set to 0.0000000), "Maintenance Profile" (a dropdown menu), "Description", and a "Comments" text area.
- Customer:** A dropdown menu.
- Table:** A grid with columns "Type", "Elapsed Time Freq (Days)", and "Usage Frequency (Hrs)". It has 10 rows, with the first row being the header.
- Buttons:** On the right side, there are buttons for "Reproduce", "Print", "Delete", "Cancel", "Help", and "Ok".

Fig. 3.5.2: Sample maintenance requirement form

3.5.2 Importance of Documentation

After repairing, the technician must provide documents about the appliance worked upon, the information can include:

- Existing service contracts, guarantees and warranties
- Information about the replacement cycles for the faulty modules
- Records of repairs and replacements
- Records of items added, replaced, or removed
- Equipment and supplies inventory
- Maintenance service agreements; routine inspections, periodic maintenance and eventual renewal services
- Safety and test certificates
- Maintenance cost involved

Documentation

Right documentation can make a lot of the difference in getting quick resolutions. To achieve this, certain steps need to be taken as shown in the following figure:

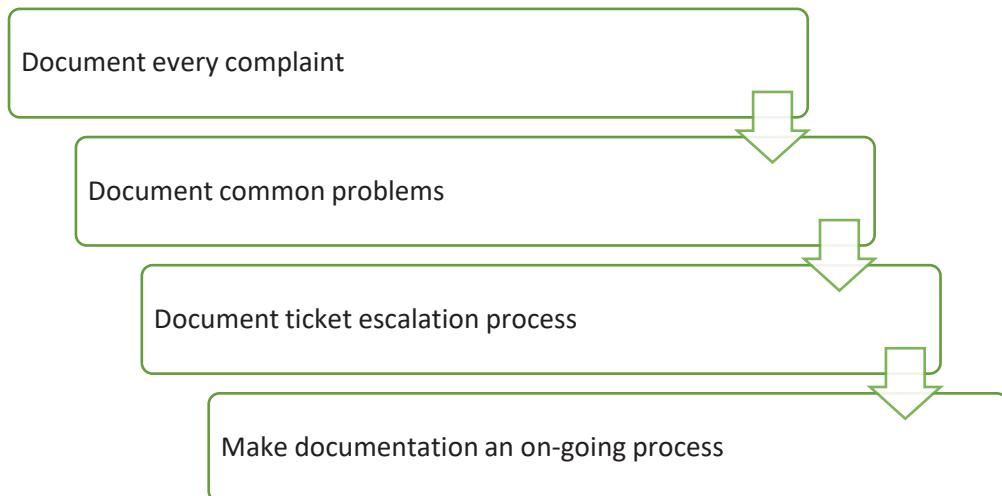


Fig. 3.5.3: Steps for documentation

Document Every Complaint

A field technician needs to document issues as they come in. In addition to recording the symptoms described by the customers, they should probe for the right symptoms. For example, if a customer says that the computer is running slow, the technician needs to differentiate whether the problem is caused by a virus or a malfunctioning part or some other system.

The field technician should know how to ask the right questions to try and resolve an issue within the first call.

Document Common Problems

Majority of the issues can be reduced to a handful of common problems. If there is a good documentation process that has resolution paths for all common problems, then the field technician does not have to reinvent the wheel for every ticket. The technician can use internal technician knowledge base and time tested processes to resolve the issues quickly.

A well organised process enables the field technician to respond to a ticket quickly and resolve most of the customers' problems immediately.

Document Ticket Escalation Process

A good escalation process makes sure that when the field technician is not able to resolve a problem, the technician addresses ticket escalation promptly. The ticket gets send to the next level of customer support and the customer does not have to wait for days for it to get resolved.

Documentation should be an On-going Effort

Documentation is not a onetime effort; it needs to be an on-going process. The field technicians should regularly optimize the issue resolution procedures and processes. This ensures that the customer issues are resolved promptly.

Activity



During your field visit, collect information and formats (if possible) that are used by HVAC technician.

(The aim of this activity is to analyse the importance of maintaining records during a field visit for maintenance or repair of an HVAC system.)

Equipment required:

1. Notepad and pen
2. HVAC system

Time required: 60-90 minutes



4. Repair of the System and Performance Check

Unit 4.1 – Complaint Handling

Unit 4.2 – Identify Faulty Parts and Troubleshooting

Unit 4.3 – Evaluating and Repairing Electrical Connections, Earthing and Motor Issues

Unit 4.4 – Achieving Delivery Standards



Key Learning Outcomes



At the end of this module, you will be able to:

1. Analyse customer input or complain to identify the issue
2. Perform basic troubleshooting steps to identify issues in chiller and cooling tower
3. Identify and fix the faulty units in chiller and cooling tower
4. Identify and fix faults in the AHU, FCU and ducts for faults
5. Evaluate and repair the electrical connections, Earthing and motor issues
6. Examine the air flow through ducts and temperature range in different regions
7. Identify the fault and perform replacement of faulty modules such as condenser, evaporator, filter and so on
8. Examine the air flow and electrical parameters to calculate efficiency of the system
9. Examine the system performance as per ISHRAE/ASHRAE and contract standards.
10. Record and report the repair work done

UNIT 4.1: Complaint Handling

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Identify customer's concern
2. Identify the symptoms and faults
3. Propose solution to the customer

4.1.1 Identify the Concerns of the Customer

An HVAC technician is responsible for the maintenance and repair of HVAC systems installed at customer's premises. It is very important for him/her to clearly understand the concerns of the customer. The following figure represents the various activities which should be done before scheduling a visit to the customers' premises:

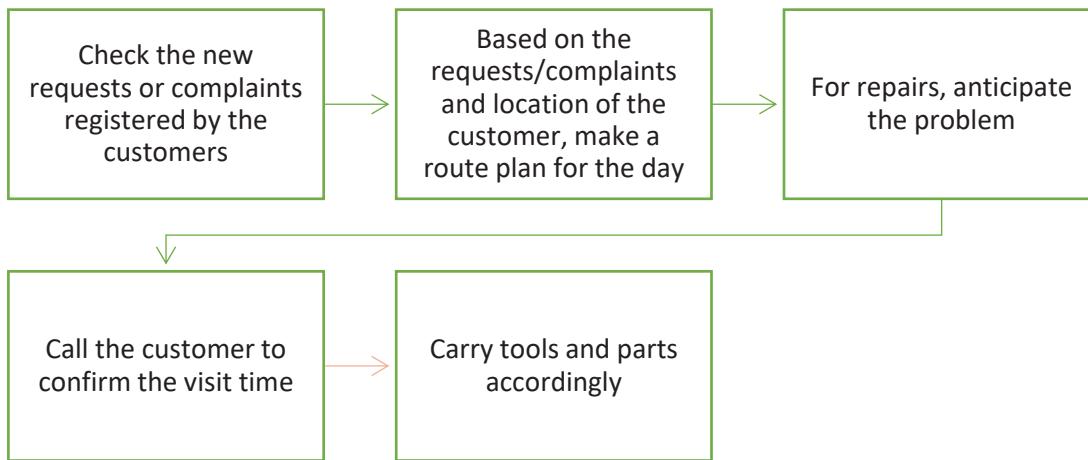


Fig. 4.1.1: To-do list for an HVAC technician

Interact with the Customers on Phone

Prior to visiting a customer's premises for repairing/servicing, it is important to call the customer and ask about the problem in detail.

The following figure highlights the to-do list to be followed when on a call with a customer before visiting the premises:

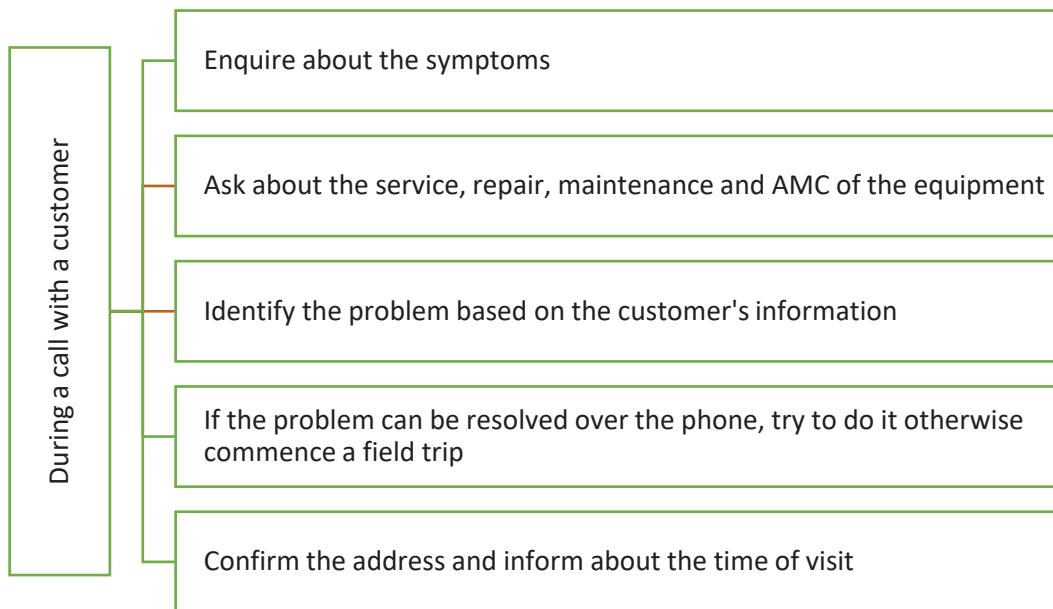


Fig. 4.1.2: Interacting with customer on Phone

Interact with the Customer at their Premises

It is a good practice to be humble and respectful towards the customer. The following figure represents how to interact with a customer when visiting the premises for service/repair:



Fig. 4.1.3: Interacting with customer

4.1.2 Understand the Symptoms and Identify the Fault

It is very important for a technician to identify the fault correctly. Wrong identification of fault will lead to wrong solution which will be waste of time and money and can also cause damage to the appliance.

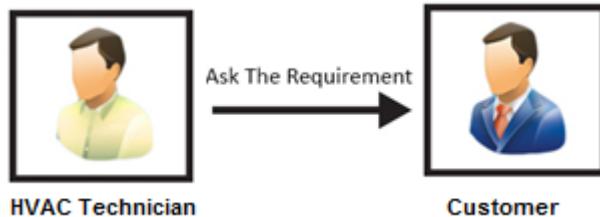


Fig. 4.1.4 Understanding Customer's Requirement:

When visiting a customer for a repair/servicing request, it is important to know the details of the problem and accordingly suggest a corrective measure. The customer should be satisfied with the suggested solution. The following figure highlights the to-do list to be followed at a customer's premises:

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| At customer's premises | Enquire about the symptoms and history of problem |
| | Ask about the year of purchase, service and warranty |
| | Identify the problem based on customer's information and examination |
| | Communicate the problem identified to the customer and inform about possible reasons |
| | Inform the customer regarding the costs involved and hand over the invoice after task is completed |
| | Ensure service is provided to achieve 100% customer satisfaction |

Fig. 4.1.5: To-do list to be followed at a customer's premises

An HVAC technician should know how to identify faults and symptoms related to that. The following figure shows steps required to understand symptoms and identify the fault:

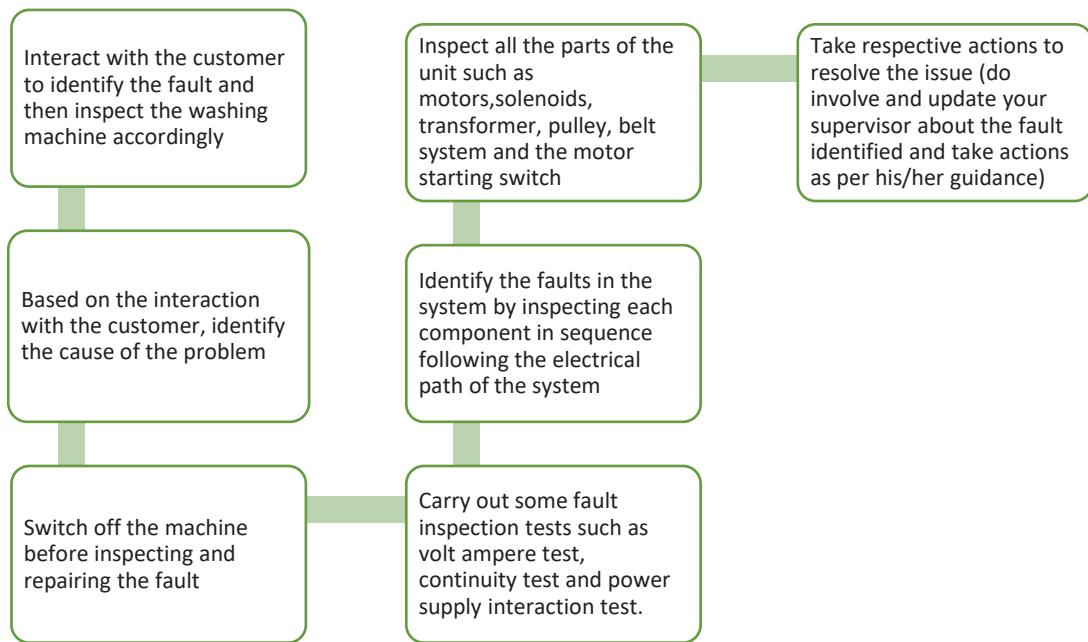


Fig. 4.1.6: Steps required to understand the symptoms and identify the fault

4.1.3 Suggest a Solution to the Customer

After identifying the issue, the HVAC technician needs to offer solutions. He should explain all the possible solutions along with the cost associated. He should then propose the best solution and let the customer decide whether to go ahead with the given solution or not. The following figure shows the steps involved in offering solutions to a customer:

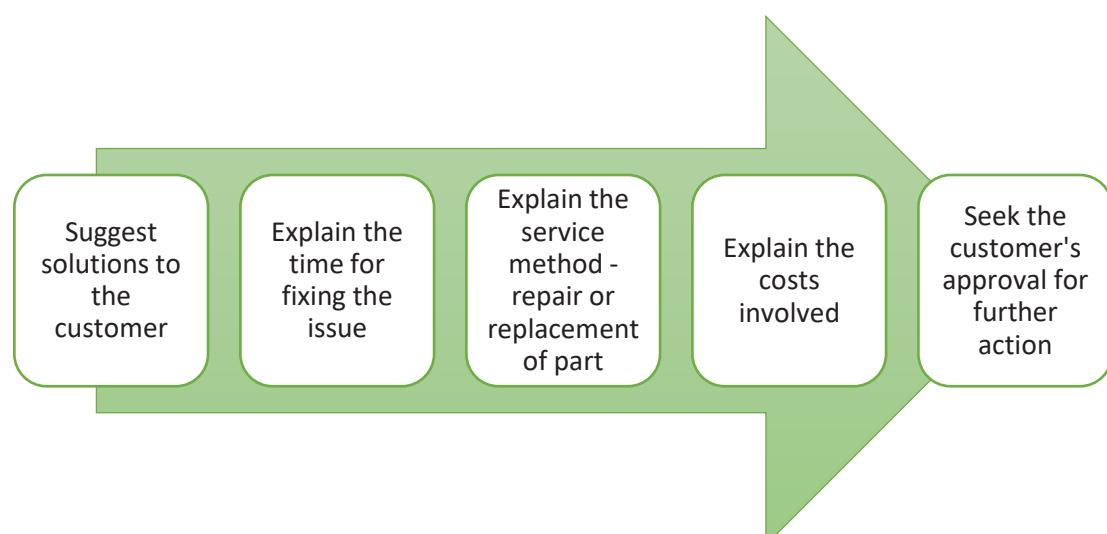


Fig. 4.1.7: Suggesting a solution to the customer for an issue

4.1.4 Confirmation of Functionality of the Repaired Module

Once the HVAC system has been repaired, ensure that the unit is functioning properly with the repaired or replaced parts. The following figure lists the checks that should be performed after repairs are complete:

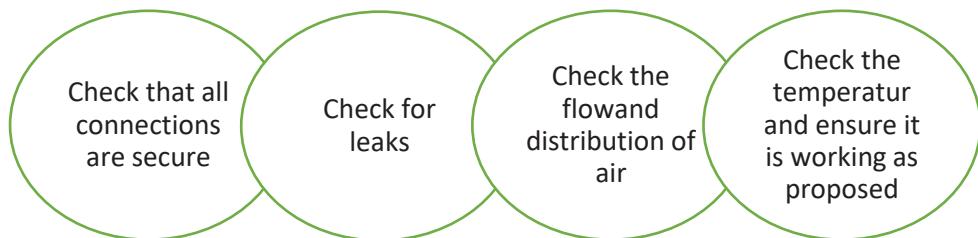


Fig. 4.1.8: Checks performed after repairs

UNIT 4.2: Identify Faulty Parts and Troubleshooting

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Identify the various fault that may occur in cooling tower
2. Troubleshoot cooling tower issues
3. Troubleshoot AHU faults
4. Troubleshoot a compressor
5. Identify various repairing methods for sealed systems

4.2.1 Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting refers to repair of faulty products or processes. It begins with searching for the source of a problem and ends with finding the solution for that problem to ensure that the product or process functions properly. Good troubleshooting consists of the following four steps:

- Identification of the symptoms
- Elimination of the causes of a problem
- Verification of the solution
- Restoration of the product or process

In other words, the first thing to do is to identify the symptoms that are causing a failure in the system. The next step is to diagnose the cause of that malfunction, till a solution is reached. This is followed by returning the product to its original state.

Troubleshooting Some Common Faults in Cooling Tower

Following are some common faults that may occur in cooling towers.

S.No.	Problems	Potential Cause	Troubleshooting Tips
1.	Unexpected Rise in Temperature	Less Air Flow	Adjust the blade level
		Water flow above the recommended level	Correct the level of water flow
		Obstruction in Sprinkler Output	Clear the obstruction, check for other faults in sprinkler and if required repair or replace the sprinkler
		Water Flow below the recommended level	Check for any leakage or obstruction in supply of water
		Obstruction in flow of external air around the cooling tower Or the exhaust air is not being recycled	Check for air obstruction or exhausts

S.No.	Problems	Potential Cause	Troubleshooting Tips
2.	Excessive Vibration or Noise	Fault in motor bearing	Lubricate it or replace it (if damaged)
		Loose fan mount/fan block	Tighten the loosen parts
		One part getting rubbed with another	Check for proper tolerance
		Loosen motor shaft hub mounting	Tighten them back using shrims
3.	Unexpected Fall in Cooling Capacity	Motor not working properly	<p>Perform the following tasks:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the fuse • Check the switch capacity • Check the flow of current to motor • Check the switch contact • Service the motor and check for any faulty part and if require replace it
		Fan not working	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for jammed bearing • Check for proper flow of current and voltage • Check for all connected wires and switches
		Check Motor RPM (Revolutions Per Minute)	<p>If Motor RPM is less:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for defects in starter • Check the electrical load and ensure it is not beyond the capacity of motor • Check the voltage supply • Check for all connections and switches • Check the manufacture's guidelines for any other cause and troubleshoot accordingly

S.No.	Problems	Potential Cause	Troubleshooting Tips
4.	Overflow of Water	Blockage in filter	Clear all the blockage Follow all necessary guidelines (manufacturer's guidelines) while cleaning the filters
		High Speed of Sprinkler	Check the angle of sprinkler and adjust accordingly Adjust the sprinkler's speed
		Incorrect placement of Sprinkler	Ensure that the sprinkler is not to above the range of filters. Adjust as recommended
5.	Water Conductivity Beyond its Range	Faulty controller	Clean it with a clean dry cloth also check for other electrical faults like loose connection, voltage supply as recommended
		Blockage in solenoid	Check for any debris or any other deposits around it
		Water Leakage	Check for all water leakage possibilities and act accordingly
		Faulty Chemical Feed Pump	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure that Chemical Feed Pump is properly primed • Adjust the chemical feed pump settings is recommended • Check for faults in chemical feed pump as recommended by manufacturer's guidelines
6.	Rise in Motor Temperature	Drop in Voltage Supply	Check and adjust the voltage supply as recommended
7.	Corrosion	Caused due to combination and reaction of air, sodium, and any other chemical components found in the water	<p>To avoid Corrosion:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Apply polymeric coating solutions • Perform regular inspections • Once Corrosion occurs • Replace the damaged part immediately

S.No.	Problems	Potential Cause	Troubleshooting Tips
8.	Scaling	Occurs during heat exchange process	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use conductive tubes coatings • Monitor and maintain calcium level of water
9.	Fouling	Clogging of pipes or cooling surface	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use chlorine for fouling treatment • For excessive clogging the respective hardware such as fill, nozzle needs to be replaced with a new one.

Table 4.2.1: Troubleshooting tips

Troubleshooting Some Common Faults in Chillers

Following are some common faults that may occur in chillers.

S.No.	Problems	Potential Cause	Troubleshooting Tips
1.	No Power Supply	Improper Voltage Supply	Check for voltage supply as recommended
		Fault in MCB	Check MCB and correct flow of electric current in the circuit
2.	High Pressure Discharge in Water Cooled Chillers	Bad water treatment	Ensure proper water treatment as per Health and Safety guidelines
		Insulation in condenser	Clean all the external and internal surfaces and components attached to the condenser
		Reduction of water flow	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the system valves • Check the strainers • Check the pumps • Check the voltage supply to the pumps
3.	Reduction in Airflow (In Air Cooled Chillers)	Dust and other deposits on Condensers	Clean all the external and internal surfaces and components attached to the condenser
4.	Low Pressure Discharge (In Air Cooled Chillers)	Suction Valve Closed partially	Check for any obstacle
		Undercharge Refrigerant	Check for leakage in pipelines

		Very low air temperature	
5.	Thermostat not Working	Electrical Defect	Check the manufacturer's manual and rectify the error. If required replace it with a new one.
6.	Insufficient Cooling	Leakage in Refrigerant	Check for leakage and resolve it
		Blocked Filter or condenser	Clean filter as per manufacturer's guidelines

Table 4.2.2: Troubleshooting tips for chillers

Troubleshooting some common faults in Refrigerant

Following are some common faults that may occur in refrigerant.

S.No.	Problems	Potential Cause	Troubleshooting Tips
1.	Excess frost	Defective bi-metal or thermal fuse or defrost heater	1. Check the continuity of each component 2. Replace defective component
2.	Temperature not maintained	Improper installation	1. Check installation 2. Check ventilation
3.	Condensation in compartment	Air leakage	1. Check for leakage 2. Do proper insulation
4.	Improper cooling	Gas leakage	1. Check for gas leakage 2. Repair the leakage 3. Refill refrigerant
5.	Frequent compressor tripping	Defective condenser fan motor	1. Check condenser fan motor 2. Replace defective motor
6.	Fan runs even when door is open	Defective door switch	1. Check door switch 2. Replace if defective
7.	No cooling in refrigerator	Defective sealed system	1. Refer to unit on sealed system
8.	Refrigeration unit not working	Fuse blown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check fuse • Replace if defective

		Defective thermostat	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Short thermostat connection 2. Check if refrigerator working 3. If yes, repair/replace thermostat
--	--	----------------------	--

Table 4.2.3: Troubleshooting tips for refrigerant

Troubleshooting Some Common Faults in AHU/FCU

Following are some common faults that may occur in an air handling unit/fan coil unit.

S.No.	Problems	Potential Cause	Troubleshooting Tips
1.	Fan Motor Not Working	Electric Power Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for voltage and loose connections • Check for electric power supply
		Control Panel Fault	Check for MCBS, Fuse and other component connections
		Isolation Switches Fault	Check for time switch error
		Duct Blockage	Clean all the blockages in ducts/filters/coil
		Impeller(rotating part of a pump/motor) jammed	Lubricate and check bearing. If required replace the faulty part
2.	Insufficient Air Flow	Blockage	Clean all the components of AHU as per manufacturer's guidelines
		Leakage	Check for leakages in all the joints, fitting and ductwork fittings
		Excessive Pressure Loss	Check air flow against fan static pressure. If fault is found in fan's static pressure rectify it else check damper position.
		High Resistance	Check main branch damper
		Extract Fan not working properly	Check Fan motor and check for other electrical faults
3.	Boilers not meeting the desired load	Boiler Thermostat not set properly	Check thermostat settings
		Poor Combustion	Check the quality of excess combustion

4.	Boiler Overheating	Fault in System Controls	Check for all electrical faults, voltage supply and safety switches
5.	The AC unit does not turn on		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the fuses or the breaker. Check the wiring and the selector switch.
6.	Air coming out from the unit is not cold enough but the temperature is set to low	Thermostat failure Exhaust Vent Problem Obstruction in Coil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check whether the thermostat is set at high warm position. Keep the exhaust vent control in "Open" position. Ensure that the location of the thermostat sensing bulb is correct. Check the cleanliness of the coils.

Table 4.2.4: Troubleshooting tips for AHU/FCU

Repairing a Fan

Generally loose or dirty blades of a fan lead to malfunctioning. Cleaning and tightening the fan blades usually fixes the problems with fan. The following figure lists the steps to repair the fan of an AC unit:

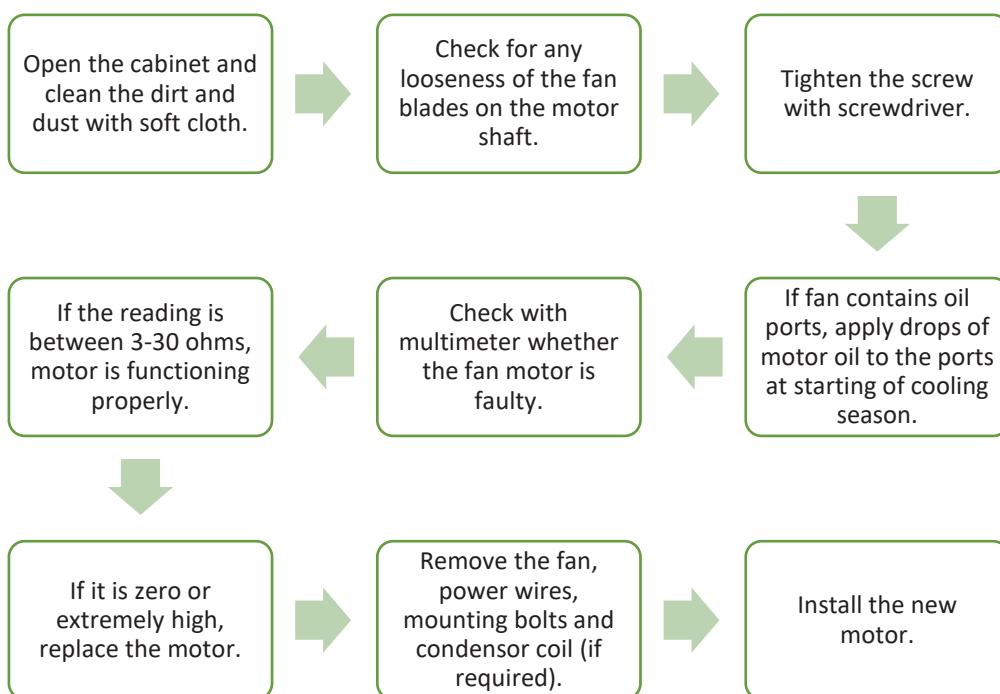


Fig. 4.2.1: Steps for repairing the fan of the Air Conditioning Unit

4.2.2 Repairing Methods for Sealed Systems

Proper repair of sealed system is dependent foremost upon a thorough understanding of the normal operating procedures, the types of failures that can occur in a sealed system and the correct diagnosis of the problem.

The following figure shows the types of failures that can necessitate repairs:

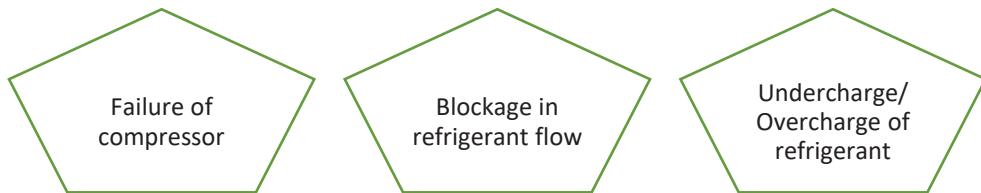


Fig. 4.2.2: Types of failures

Failure of Compressor

The inflow and outflow of refrigerant in a compressor is regulated by two valves. A defective valve leads to inefficiency and subsequently a failure of compressor. The compressor is unable to maintain correct pressure differential needed for proper evaporation and condensation of refrigerant.

Blockage in Refrigerant Flow

The system must be free of any contaminants or moisture. Moisture is especially very harmful to the system. Water mixes with the refrigerant and forms salt and sludge. These salts and debris block the flow of refrigerant through the capillary tube.

Undercharge/Overcharge of Refrigerant

The system should be charged properly with the factory recommended refrigerant. It is highly unlikely for a unit to leave the factory with incorrect charge. Undercharge or overcharge of refrigerant is usually a result of poor system processing after repairs. It occurs when a unit is incorrectly charged after performing repair. Undercharge reduces the system's ability to absorb heat and overcharge has an adverse impact on the cooling efficiency as well as on power consumption.

Once the problem has been isolated, appropriate repairs can be undertaken.

The following figure shows the prerequisites for a successful repair:

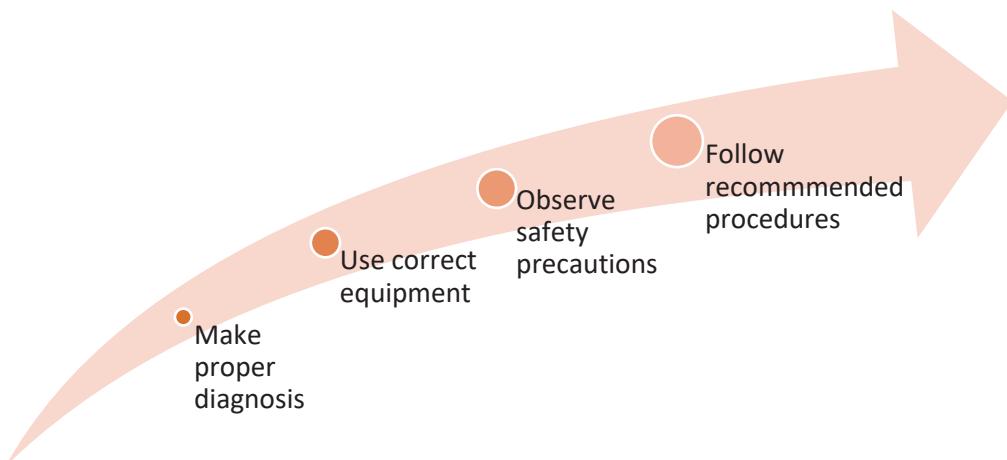


Fig. 4.2.3: Prerequisites for successful repair

Sealed system repair consists of specific steps that need to be followed.

The following figure shows the steps of sealed system repair:

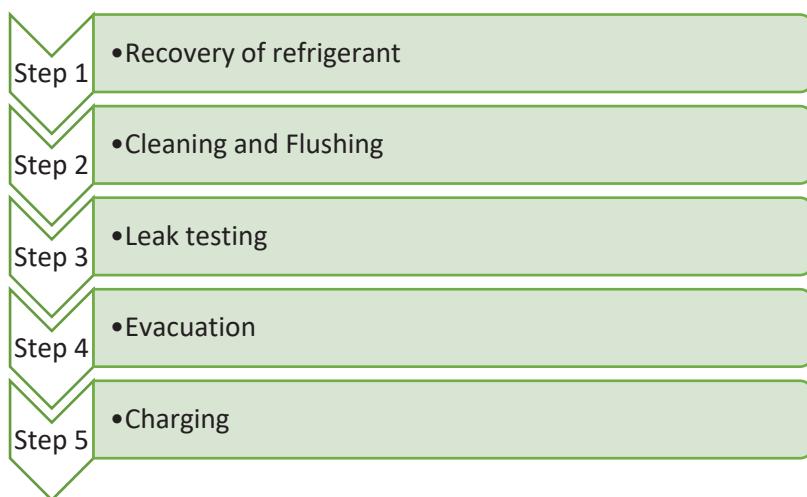


Fig. 4.2.4: Steps of sealed system repair

Recovery of Refrigerant

Recovery of a refrigerant refers to the process of removing a refrigerant from a system and storing it in a recovery cylinder. A recovery cylinder is different from the conventional cylinder in two ways. First, the cylinder valve has the refrigerant filling port enabled and secondly, its upper part is painted yellow to mark it as a recovery cylinder.

There are three different methods of recovering a refrigerant, as shown in the following figure:

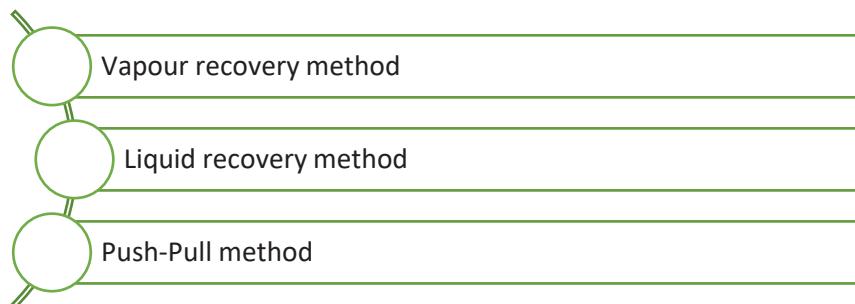


Fig. 4.2.5: Methods of refrigerant recovery

Vapour Recovery Method

It is the most common method of refrigerant recovery. The refrigerant which is in vapour form is drawn into the recovery system from the refrigeration unit. It passes through the compressor to the condenser. The gas cools down to liquid and is stored in the recovery cylinder. The following figure shows the steps of the vapour recovery method:

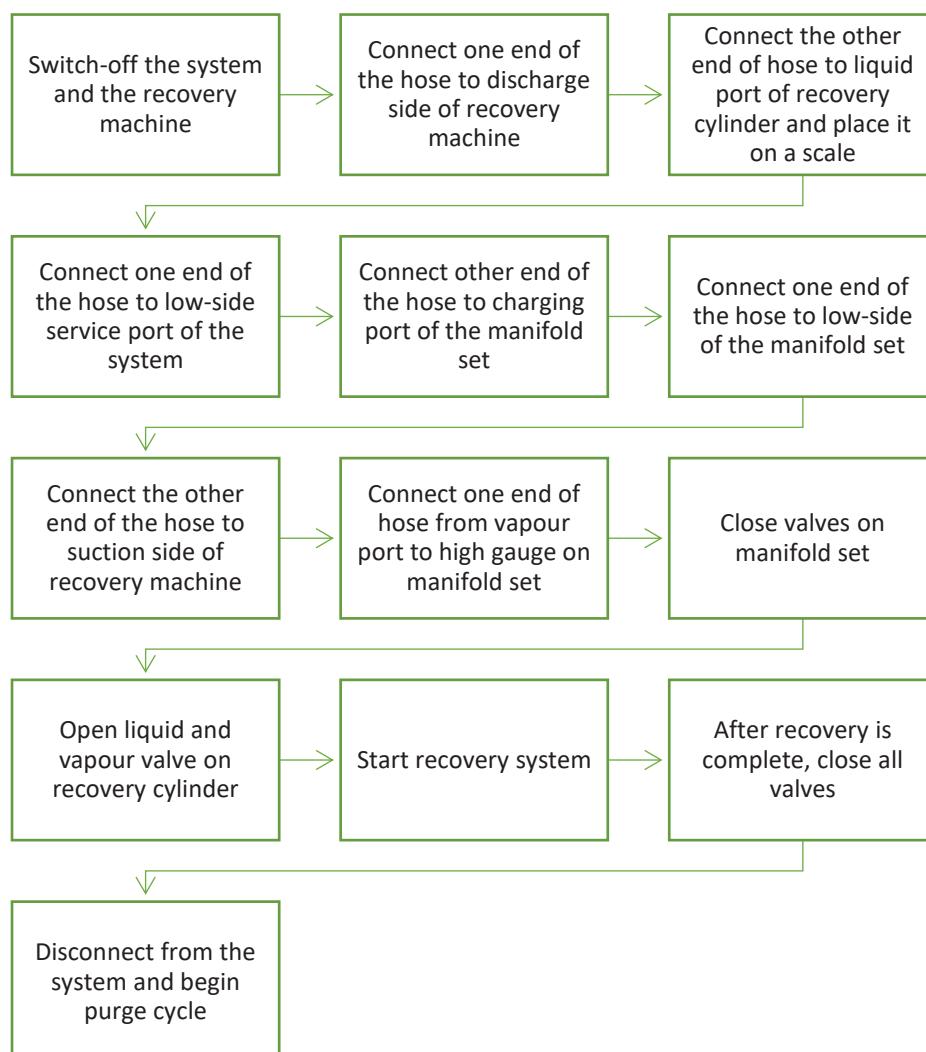


Fig. 4.2.6: Vapour recovery method

Liquid recovery Method

This method is preferred when the refrigerant has to be recovered from oil-less compressors having constant-pressure valves. The recovery method is similar to the vapour recovery method with the difference that it enables liquid refrigerant to be recovered.

The following figure shows the steps of the liquid recovery method:

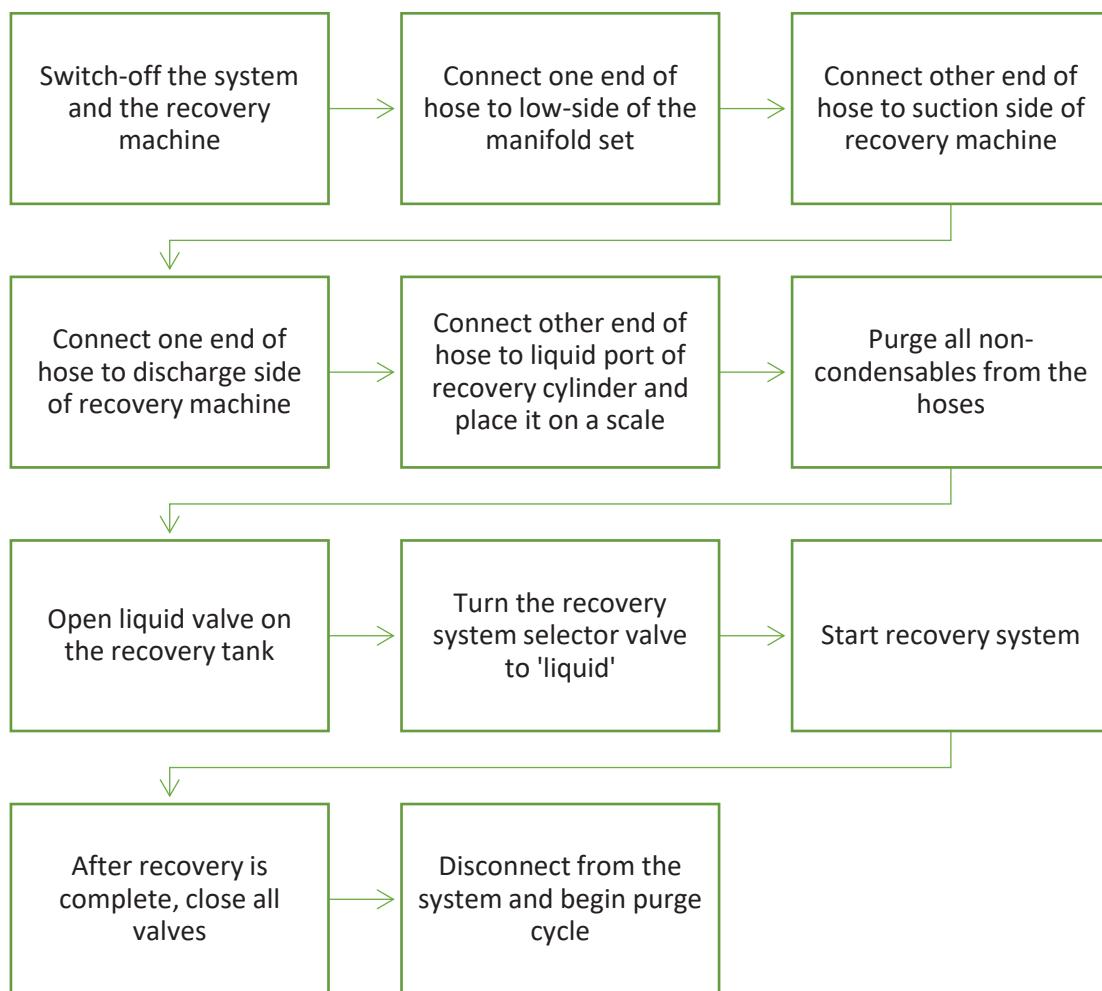


Fig. 4.2.7: Liquid recovery method

Push-Pull Method

This method is used to recover bulk liquid from a system. The recovery machine creates potential difference to siphon the refrigerant from one tank to another. The recovery unit pulls vapour from the recovery cylinder. This produces a high-pressure gas that pushes the liquid out of the system into the recovery cylinder.

The following figure shows the steps of the push-pull method:

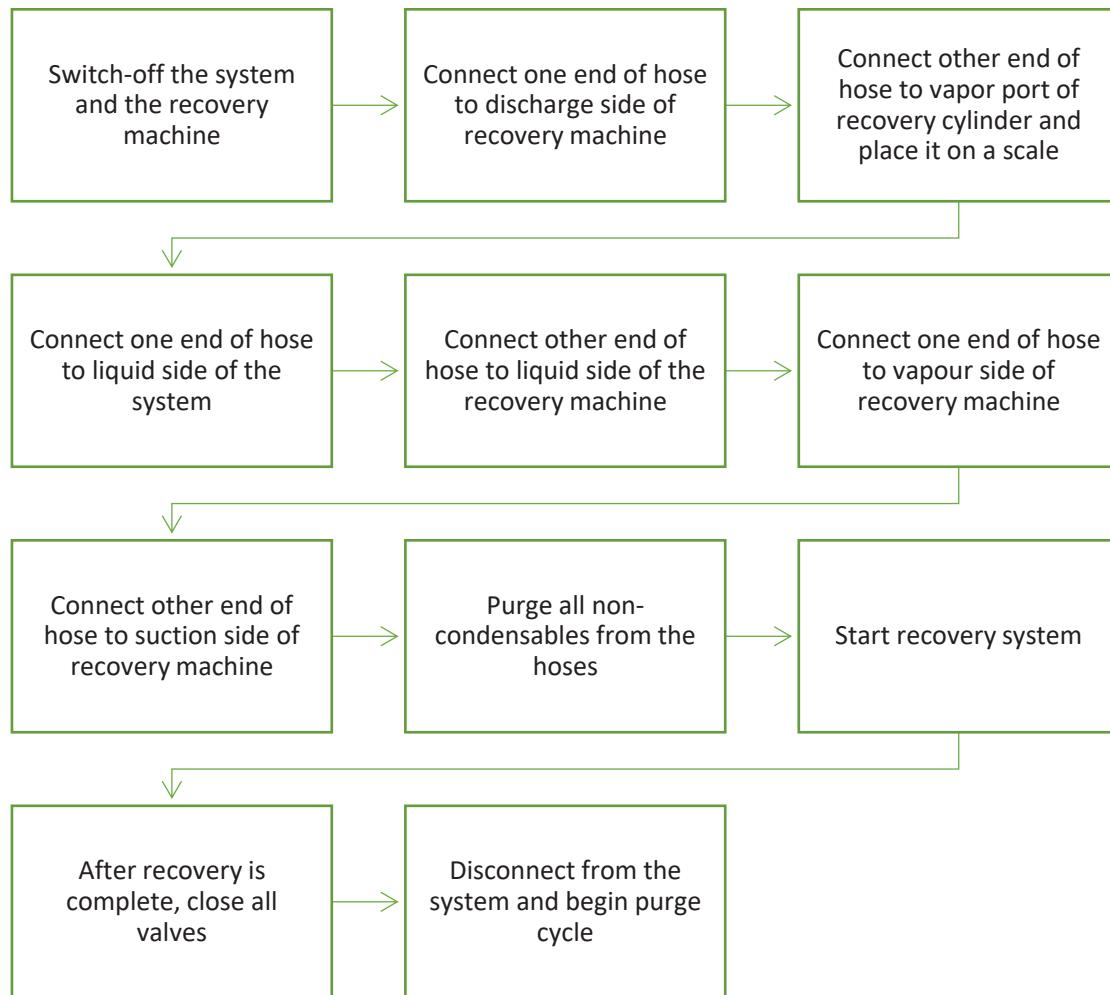


Fig. 4.2.8: Push-pull method

Cleaning and Flushing

When a refrigeration system suffers a failure, it becomes contaminated with disintegrated particulate, sludge, acids, carbon residues, and moisture. These contaminants need to be cleaned and flushed out of the system. The most common cause of contamination is compressor failure.

The following figure shows the guidelines that must be followed when flushing a system:

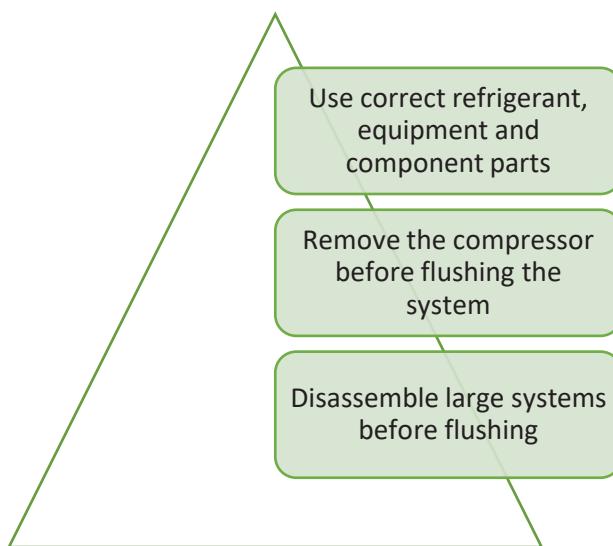


Fig. 4.2.9: Guidelines for flushing system

It is very important to use correct equipment, ensure that it is in good working condition and undertake periodic and regular maintenance of the tools.

The following figure shows the equipment required for flushing a system:

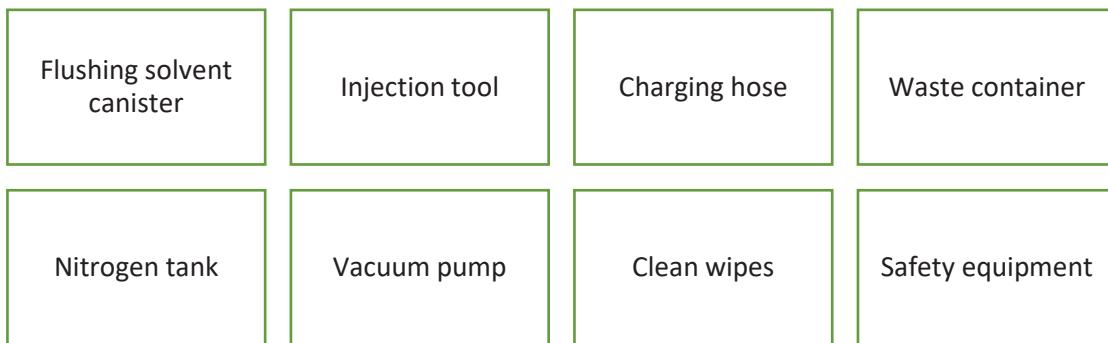


Fig. 4.2.10: Equipment for flushing system

Before starting the flushing operation, confirm the availability of all required tools and equipment.

The following figure shows the steps of flushing a system:

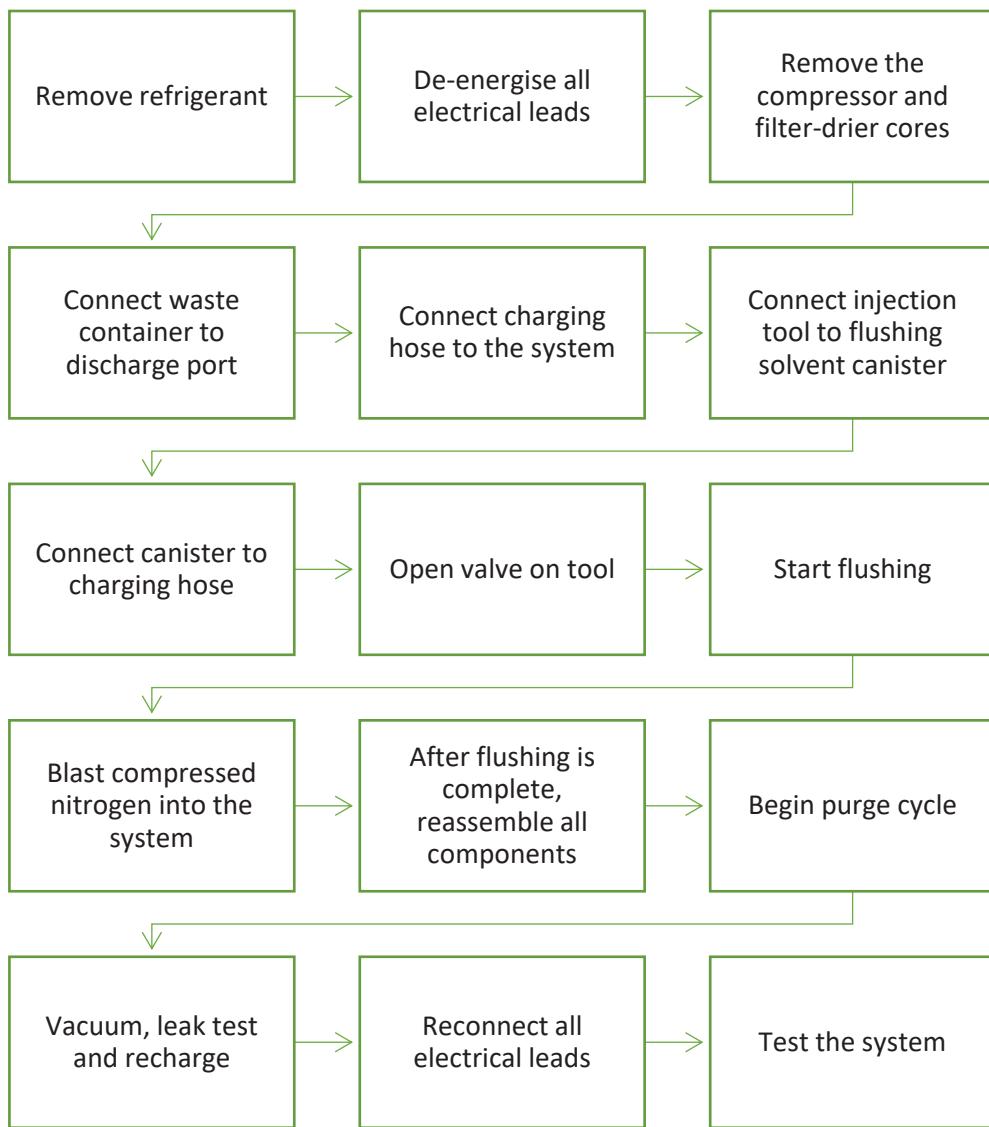


Fig. 4.2.11: Steps for flushing system

Leak Testing

The refrigerators can operate properly only with a fixed charge of refrigerant. If it is diagnosed during troubleshooting that the refrigerant is insufficient, then the system needs to be checked for leaks. These leaks are then repaired, and the system is recharged with refrigerant.

The following figure lists the various causes of refrigerant leaks:

Vibration	• Leads to misalignment of seals and loosening of bolts
Frequent temperature changes	• Leads to expansion and contraction in metal parts
Frequent pressure changes	• Leads to difference in material stress
Incorrect material used	• Fail under pressure or temperature changes
Poor connections	• Result in leakage from joints, connections or caps on valves
Corrosion	• Decays the materials creating holes
Accidental damage	• Leads to impact on refrigerant containing parts

Fig. 4.2.12: Causes of refrigerant leaks

Once the possibility of leak is diagnosed, it is critical to check the whole system for multiple leaks and mark them for repair. Leak detection is carried out manually by the technician to identify possible leaks.

The following figure shows the methods for leak detection:

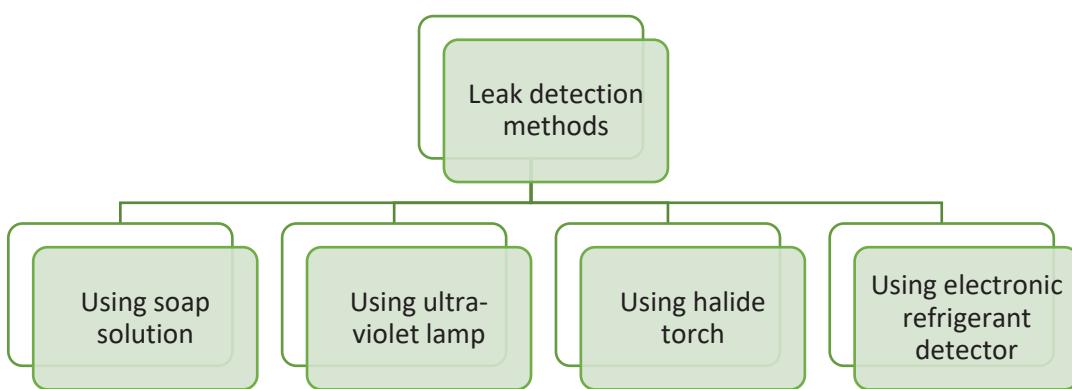


Fig. 4.2.13: Methods of leak detection

Using Soap Solution

It is the most effective and economical method used by technicians to detect leakage.

A soap solution is applied to joints, connections and fittings while the system is running. The appearance of bubbles confirms leakage.

The following image shows leak detection using soap solution:



Fig. 4.2.14: Leak detection using soap solution

Using Ultra-Violet Lamp

In case of large refrigeration systems, it is difficult to access all joints and connections. So, it is not possible to use soap solution or electronic detector to check for leakage. In such situations, ultra-violet lamp is used. An additive dye is added to the refrigerant. When a ultra-violet lamp is pointed, the leak glows in yellow-green colour.

The following image shows leak detection using ultra-violet lamp:



Fig. 4.2.15: Leak detection using ultra-violet lamp

Using Halide Torch

The halide torch is used to detect leakage of CFCs and HCFCs. It contains a copper catalyst over which the refrigerant is drawn with the help of a blue flame. When the refrigerant burns over the copper catalyst, the chlorine in it reacts and the colour of the flame changes to green. It does not work in case of refrigerants such as HFCs which do not contain chlorine.

The following image shows a halide torch:



Fig. 4.2.16: A halide torch

Using Electronic Refrigerant Detector

An electronic refrigerant detector is a battery or AC powered device containing an element sensitive to a particular chemical component in the refrigerant. As it approaches the source of leak, the audible or visible signal increases in frequency and intensity.

The following image shows leak detection using electronic refrigerant detector:



Fig. 4.2.17: Leak detection using electronic refrigerant detector

Evacuation

Evacuation refers to the process of removing vapours, fluids and non-condensable gases such as air and nitrogen from the refrigeration system.

The following figure shows the equipment needed for evacuating a system:

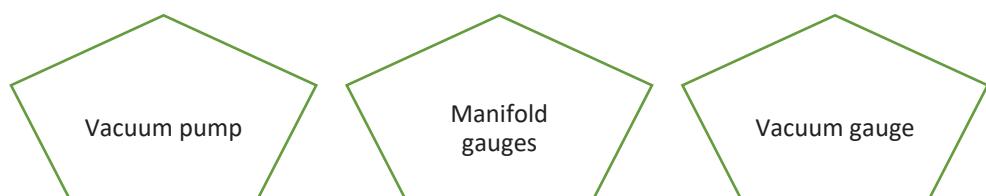


Fig. 4.2.18: Equipment for evacuating a system

The following figure shows the steps of evacuating a system:

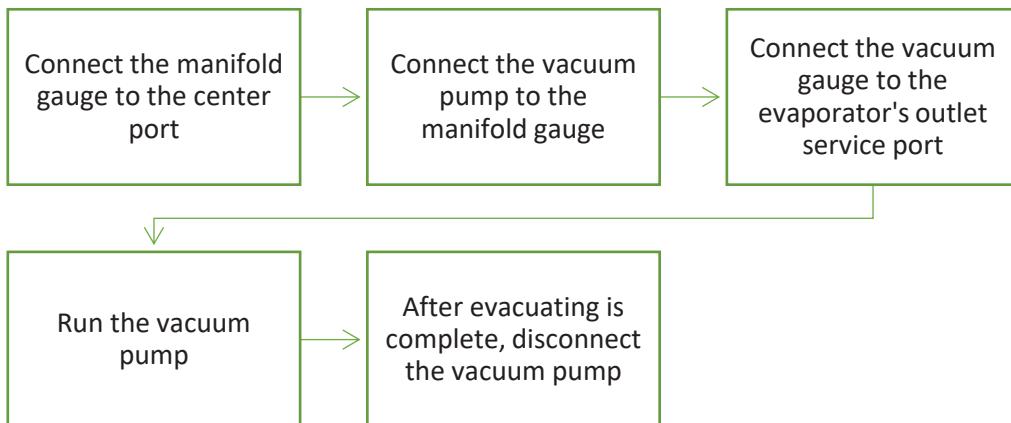


Fig. 4.2.19: Steps for evacuating a system

Charging

Every refrigeration system needs an optimum level of refrigerant to function efficiently. When the level of refrigerant drops, it needs to be filled-up. Charging refers to the process of adding the refrigerant in proper quantity to a refrigeration system.

The following figure shows the steps of charging a system:

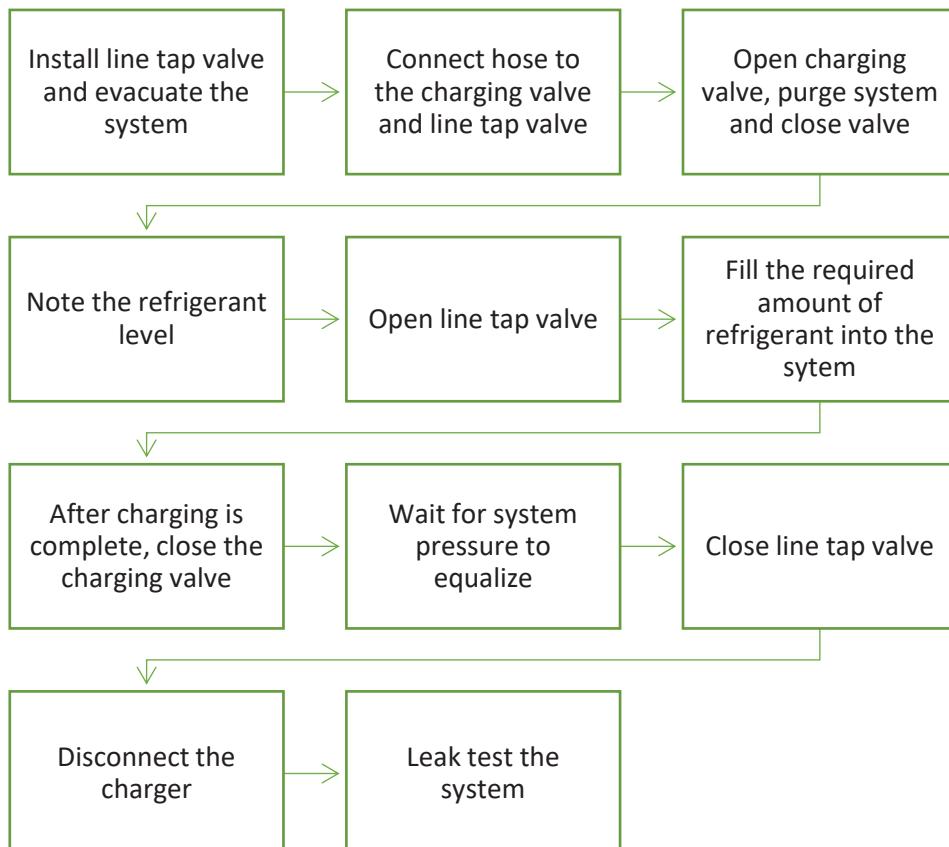


Fig. 4.2.20: Steps for charging a system

Testing a compressor

Step 1: Check the power outlet to make sure it is working well.

Step 2: Turn the power off and take out the unit's terminal cover by removing the mounting screws located at the four corners of the front of the air conditioner unit. Ensure that the terminals and wires are not damaged.

Step 3: Check the compressor to make sure that there is no cracked valve inside it.

Step 4: Test the electrical terminals using a multimeter. A typical unit has three terminals; C, R, and S. The continuity between every two terminals (C - R, C - S, and R - S) should be tested.

- Check the wire connections and if the wire is found faulty, replace it.
- If the resistance is higher (higher than 30 ohms), check if the compressor is hot. If so, it may be that the internal overload is open and wait for the compressor to cool down.
- If the resistance is high but the unit is cool, it indicates that the compressor motor is bad.

Step 5: Check the resistance of each of the terminals to the compressor's body. If the resistance reading is low, it signifies that the motor is grounded and the compressor needs a replacement.

UNIT 4.3: Evaluating and Repairing Electrical Connections, Earthing and Motor Issues

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

- Identify the electrical faults in an HVAC system

4.3.1 Evaluating and Repairing Electrical Connections

All electrical systems should be subjected to thorough testing and inspections after the completion of installation. Faulty wiring can lead to potential life-threatening situations. The inspection and testing ensure that all the wiring and appliances are installed in perfect order.

Visual Inspection

Visual inspection of the installation is carried out prior to conducting any tests. This ensures that the system is safe to test. The following figure lists the checks that a domestic electrician should perform and ensure as a part of visual inspection:

- The final circuit is protected
- Consumer unit is labelled correctly
- Earthing conductor is in place
- An RCD is in place
- Cables, enclosures and accessories are fixed securely
- All cables are terminated properly and all connections are tight

Fig. 4.3.1: Visual inspection

Charging the Circuit

The first step of testing the wiring system is to charge the circuit by performing the following steps:

- Connect the main supply line
- Ensure that all the circuits are switched off
- Switch on the circuits one by one
- Check all parameters such as voltage and earthing at each termination point

Applying Load and Checking if it Works

Once the electric circuit is charged and all the parameters have been checked, apply loads one at a time and check if they are working. Load refers to any appliance or fixture that draws power and puts a load on the circuit such as light, fan, refrigerator, air conditioner (AC) and so on.

Perform the following steps, to check if a load is working:

1. Turn on the switch connected to the appliance
2. Check if it is working
3. If not, turn off the switch
4. Check if the circuit breaker has tripped
5. If not, check the wiring and the connections

Keep on switching one appliance after another. Repeat the steps after adding each load.

Performing Simple Wiring Tests

A lot of tests can be performed using simple handheld instruments such as neon –tester, continuity tester, mini multimeter and 3-prong analyzer.

Using a Neon Circuit Tester

A neon circuit tester is an inexpensive, versatile and simple electrical testing tool. It has two probes and a neon indicator light that glows when power is connected. It is generally used to test if a circuit is energized. The red test lead is connected to the “hot” side/wire and the black lead is connected to the “neutral” side/wire. If the circuit is live, the lamp lights up.

The following image shows a typical neon circuit tester:



Fig. 4.3.2: A typical neon circuit tester

Perform the following steps to test a ground wire:

1. Switch off the power to the concerned circuit
2. Disconnect and separate the wires
3. Switch on the circuit
4. Touch the hot wire with one lead and the ground wire with the other lead
5. If the ground wire is good, the lamp will glow

Perform the following steps to test that a metal box is grounded:

1. Switch off the power to the concerned circuit
2. Disconnect and separate the wires
3. Switch on the circuit
4. Touch the hot wire with one lead and the metal box with the other lead
5. If the metal box is grounded, the lamp will glow

Using a Continuity Tester

A continuity tester is an inexpensive, versatile and simple electrical testing tool for tracing wiring and testing switches. It has a wire lead, a probe and a light bulb. When the probe and the lead are touched to a wire, the bulb glows if the circuit is complete. This helps in tracing the route of a wire even when the circuit is switched off.

The following image shows a typical continuity tester:



Fig. 4.3.3: Continuity tester

Perform the following steps to identify the route of a wire:

1. Switch off the power to the concerned circuit
2. Connect the test wire to a circuit wire inside one of the electric boxes
3. Attach the lead to the test wire
4. Touch the probe to the ends of wires inside the other electric box
5. When the right wire is found, the lamp will glow

Perform the following steps to test a switch:

1. Switch off the power to the concerned circuit
2. Remove the switch
3. Attach the lead to one terminal of the switch
4. Touch the probe to the other terminal
5. Flip the switch on and off
6. If the switch is good, the lamp will also glow on and off

Wiring Systems Tests

The wiring systems tests are of two types:

- Dead Testing
- Live Testing

Dead Testing

Dead testing forms the initial testing of the circuits. They are performed when the circuits are not energized. Dead Tests include:

- Leakage Test
- Insulation Test
- Ring Circuit Test

Live Testing

Live testing on circuits is performed after dead testing. After the results of dead testing are found satisfactory, the electric installation is put back into place. The next step is to perform the following live tests:

- Polarity test
- Earth loop impedance test
- Prospective short circuit test
- Residual current device test

Verifying Polarity

The polarity test is conducted to ensure that the polarity at the main supply point is correct. It checks that the live and the neutral have not been crossed over. It verifies that the fixed equipment, sockets and switches in the system are connected in the current carrying conductor and not in the neutral. There are two methods of verifying polarity:

- Continuity Testing
- Live Testing

Continuity Testing

The following steps are performed to test the polarity by continuity testing:

1. Switch off the circuit breaker for the circuit under test
2. Connect a temporary link between the line conductor and the circuit protective conductor (CPC) or any equipotential bonding conductors.
3. Place the test leads of an ohmmeter across the line conductor and the nearest CPC
4. If the switch is connected properly to the line conductor, the instrument will show zero reading
5. If the switch is not connected to the line conductor, the instrument will show some osmic value
6. Interchange the connections to fix the problem

The process of troubleshooting electrical faults consists of the following steps:

- Inspect and locate potential hazards
- identify and rectify faults in domestic electrical wiring
- disassemble and replace faulty electrical components

Inspect and Locate Potential Hazards

Potential hazards refer to situations which are not dangerous at present but can be a risk in the near future. It is critical to be able to identify such situations, inspect the cause of the problem and rectify it. The following table lists some common potential hazards and their solutions:

Symptom	Cause	Solution
Power outages	A safety trigger is tripped	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open the main breaker panel Switch on the tripped circuit breaker Inspect the circuit and outlets controlled by the tripped breaker for defect
Dimming/flickering lights	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loose bulb Faulty light switch Loose wiring 	<p>Loose bulb</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Switch off the light Tighten the bulb in its socket <p>Faulty light switch</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace the switch <p>Loose wiring</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Switch off the concerned circuit breaker Remove the light fixture Inspect the wiring If defective, replace wiring
Sparking in any part of the electrical system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wear and tear Overloaded circuit Loose wiring Damaged wiring 	<p>Wear and tear of component</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace the component <p>Overloaded circuit</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Switch off the circuit breaker Switch off all lights, fixtures and appliances Switch on the circuit breaker Switch on the fittings one by one Locate the defective fitting Shift it to another circuit

Symptom	Cause	Solution
		Loose wiring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch off all lights, fixtures and appliances • Switch off the circuit breaker • Inspect the wiring • Tighten loose connections Damaged wiring Replace wiring
Overheating of appliances or sockets or plugs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Frayed wiring • Loose wiring • Defective appliance • Defective plug/socket • Incorrect fuse 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unplug the appliance • Inspect the plug and socket • Replace the defective part • Inspect the appliance • Replace if defective • Inspect the wiring for wear and tear • Replace if defective • Inspect connections • Tighten loose connections • Inspect the fuse • Replace with a higher rating fuse
Unusual sounds from any part of the electrical system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Loose wire • Short circuit • Damaged motor of an appliance 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch off the circuit breaker of the affected part • Inspect the wiring • Tighten loose connections • Inspect the appliance on that circuit • If defective, repair the motor
Burning odour	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Loose connections • Overheated wires • Damaged insulation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch off all lights, fixtures and appliances • Switch off the circuit breaker • Inspect the wiring • Tighten loose connections • Replace the damaged wires

Table 4.3.1: Causes of potential hazards and their solutions

Burnt Wire in Electrical Box

The following figure lists the steps to repair a burned wire in an electrical box:

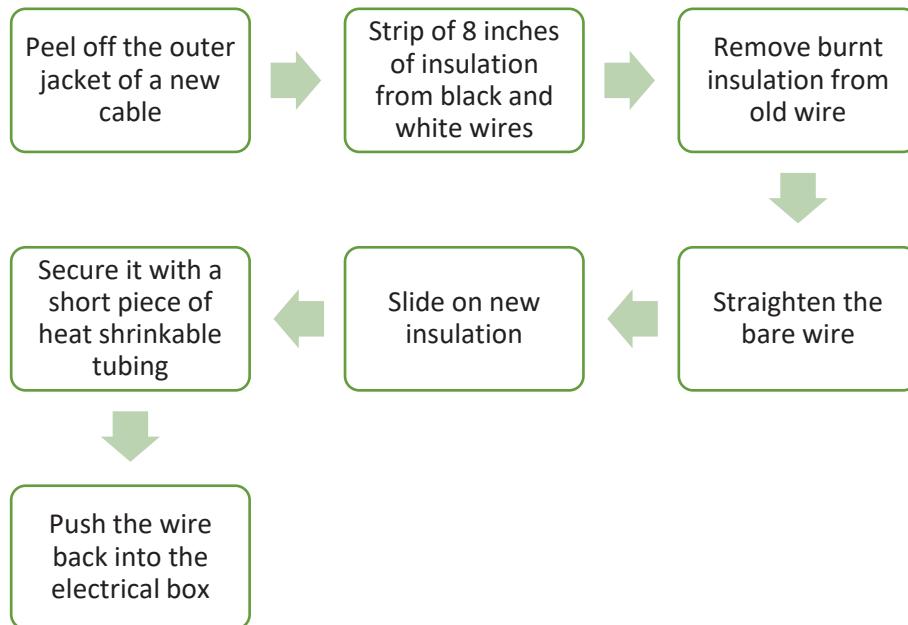


Fig. 4.3.4: Repairing a burned wire in an electrical box

Fix Underground Wiring

The following figure lists the steps to fix underground wiring:

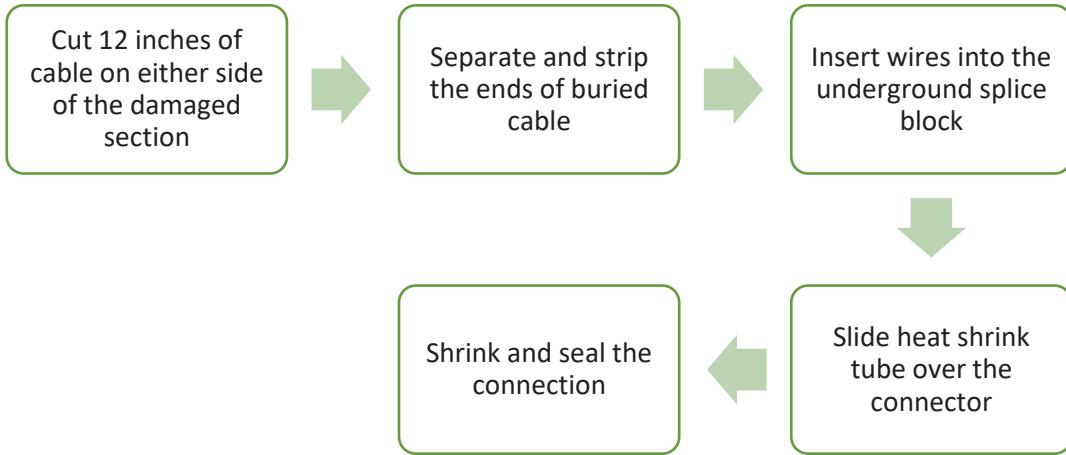


Fig. 4.3.5: Fixing underground wiring

4.3.2 Evaluating and Repairing Earthing Issues

Earth leakage or ground leakage refers to the flow of current from a live conductor to earth through an insulator. It is hazardous and should be controlled. To control such earthing issues Earth Leakage Circuit Breaker (ELCB) are used.

How to check earth leakage?

Check the resistance of each terminal by using a multimeter. If it is close to zero, this means it is causing an earth leakage. You need to immediately find the cause and rectify it accordingly. Some of the possible reasons that may cause earth leakage are:

- Any wire connected to electric circuit touching the grounded metal field.
- Loose Wire Connection
- Neutral conductor touching the earth conductor

Performing Leakage Test

- Every electric conductor is enclosed in a protective insulation for protection. Ideally, the insulation should be perfect and should not allow any current to pass through it. But, in real world this is not the case and some current will flow through the insulation or the protective ground conductor to ground.

Leakage Current

- Leakage current is the small amount of current that is present through and over the insulation. Over time, a build-up of leakage current can prove to be dangerous and is an indication of deterioration in insulation. It is, therefore, very important to test and identify the source of the leakage current. Leakage current can be measured with the help of a clamp meter.

Measuring Leakage Current

Disconnect the load before measuring the leakage current. To test single phase circuits, perform the following steps:

- Clamp the jaws of the clamp meter around the phase and the neutral conductor as shown in the following image:



Fig. 4.3.6: Testing a single-phase circuit

- If the meter records any current value, this indicates leakage of current to the ground.

To test three phase circuits, perform the following steps:

- Clamp the jaws of the clamp meter around all the three conductors as shown in the following image:



Fig. 4.3.7: Testing a three-phase circuit

- If the meter records any current value, this indicates leakage of current to the ground.

To test the ground conductors, perform the following steps:

- Clamp the jaws of the clamp meter around the ground conductor as shown in the following image:

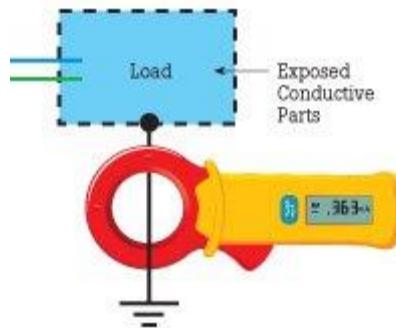


Fig. 4.3.8: Testing ground conductor

If the meter records any current value, this indicates leakage of current to the ground.

Circuit Breaker Fuse

The following figure lists the steps to dissemble and replace a faulty circuit breaker fuse:

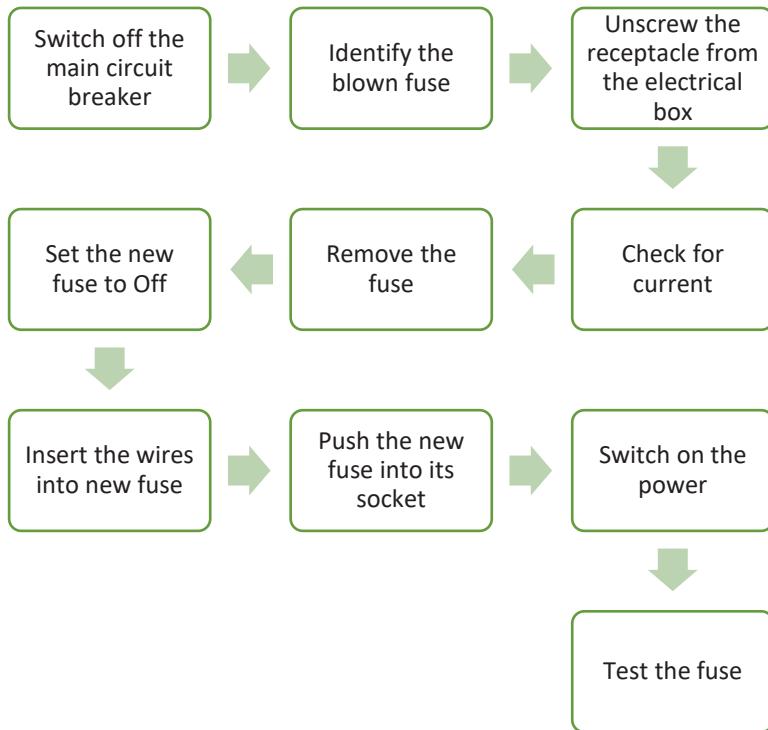


Fig. 4.3.9: Replacing a faulty circuit breaker fuse

4.3.3 Evaluating and Repairing Motor Issues

The blower motor fitted in HVAC system is responsible to blow conditioned air through duct/vents. The following factors can help evaluating the performance of a blower motor:

- Less/ No Air Flow
- Overheating
- High Sound

Note:

Some of the factors that can affect HVAC electric motors are:



Dirty condenser coil may not directly impact the working of motor but with regular deposits of debris and sticking the airflow will put lot of load on motor. This may result in lowering down the HVAC system energy efficiency and increases the motor problems.

Such as overheating of motor or may lead to any other physical or electric damage to the motor. So, it recommended to regularly clean the condenser coils.

There can be any reason for tripping of MCBs. Every time the MCB trips the system gets off and again it is started as required. Such Frequent on-off cycle can impact the motor too. Such trippings should not be ignored, the root cause should be find and rectified immediately

If the motor is not working properly, you need to perform the following tasks:

Task 1: Check for physical damage of the motor parts:

1. Check for broken mounting or any other part
2. Check for deposition of dust or debris from surroundings
3. Check for rust/corrosion
4. Check for damaged wire

If any of the above issues are identified rectify as per the instruction manual. If required replace the broken, rusted part.

Task 2: Check the bearings of motor:

1. Ensure that the rotation is free and it is spinning quietly without making any noise
2. Check shaft by pulling out and pushing in with slight movements

If the movements are not smooth, there is need for lubrication. If still the problem is not resolved change the faulty parts.

Task 3: Check the Windings

1. Check the windings that may get damage due to short circuit in electrical supply.
2. Check its resistance value using a ohmmeter

Task 4: Check for other possible issues

1. Check the capacitor used to run the motor
2. Check the fan
3. Check for proper voltage supply
4. Check for continuous flow of electric current

All the tasks performed to evaluate and repair the motor should be well documented and approved by the supervisor.

UNIT 4.4: Achieving Delivery Standards

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Adhere 100% to contracted standards of work
2. Achieve downtime of less than 1% or as contracted
3. Escalate problems in time and as per criticality of work process
4. Maintain 100% records of activity

4.4.1 Adhere 100% to Contracted Standards of Work

A customer service department must own a measurable set of standards so that the helpdesk technicians can be aware of what expected from them. These standards ensure that the customer service and satisfaction is consistently at the highest possible level.

The standards for customer service should also reflect the organizational values. For example, hospitality industry may have different customer service standards in comparison with a corporate service that provides technology tools to a wide range of commercial customers. To make sure that the service levels are consistent throughout the organization, a clear and measurable set of standards need to be designed and followed.

The following figure shows the features of customer service standards:



Fig. 4.4.1: Features of customer service standards

- **Timeliness** – The IT helpdesk technician should aim for a timely resolution of customer issues.
- **Accuracy** – Customer service must be accurate. The focus should be on solving the issue with right set of methods and standards.
- **Appropriateness** – Appropriateness refers to how effectively the expectations of the customers are met. The helpdesk technician should ensure that the best possible solution is selected to resolve an issue.

- **Measurability** – To be effective, the standards need to be measurable. Along with setting standards, guidelines should also be created to be aware of how to monitor them and evaluate the results. The helpdesk technician should use these guidelines to point out the problem areas and maintain the service standards consistently.

Benefits of Implementing Standards

Once the service standards are defined, they need to be followed by the customer service team. The helpdesk technicians should have a clear understanding of the benefits of following such standards. Some benefits of these standards are as shown in the following figure:



Fig. 4.4.2: Benefits of customer service standards

4.4.2 Achieve Downtime of Less Than 1% or as Contracted

Downtime or outage duration refers to the period when a system becomes unavailable and is not able to perform its primary function. When this happens, it raises questions on the availability, reliability and recovery of the system. The unavailability is the proportion of a time-span that a system is not available because of the system failing to function due to an unplanned event, or as a result routine maintenance.

As depicted in the following figure, downtime occurs in two ways:

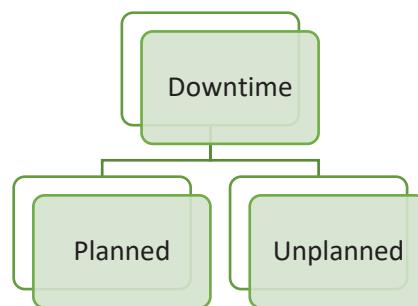


Fig. 4.4.3: Occurrence of downtime

Planned downtime

Planned downtime is the result of scheduled system maintenance work. This includes upgrading a system or replacing aged hardware from time to time, which requires rebooting a machine. Planned and scheduled downtime in service windows has minimal impact but is difficult to avoid.

Unplanned downtime

Unplanned downtime is beyond the control of the organization and is unforeseeable. It, therefore, has more impact on the business. Examples of unplanned downtime are infrastructure failures, human mistakes or even geographical catastrophes.

4.4.3 Maintain 100% Record Activity

Good customer service also involves maintaining accurate records, managing details of dealings with the customers. Customer records can help in gathering information about how best it is to market a company's services and help to ensure that the organisation is running smoothly. Most records are stored electronically on a database.

Objectives of Documentation

- To record all the problems reported by users.
- To record the timing of the corrective action.
- To record the issues that are escalated and to whom.
- To record what action has been taken by whom.
- To record when the outstanding requests get cleared.

Right documentation can make a lot of the difference in getting quick resolutions.

To achieve this, certain steps need to be taken as shown in the following figure:

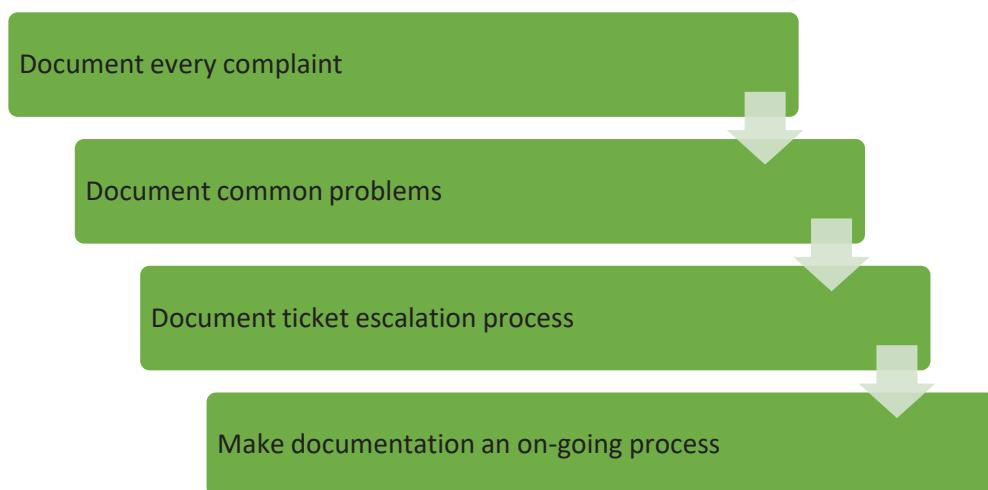


Fig. 4.4.4: Steps for right documentation

Document Every Complaint

The help desk technicians need to document issues as they come in. In addition to recording the symptoms described by the customers, they should probe for the right symptoms. For example, if a customer says that his computer is running slow, the help desk needs to differentiate whether the problem is caused by a virus or a malfunctioning hardware or an unpatched system.

The help desk technician should know how to ask the right questions to try and resolve an issue within the first call.

Document Common Problems

Majority of the help desk issues can be reduced to a handful of common problems. If there is a good documentation process that has resolution paths for all common problems, then the help desk technician does not have to reinvent the wheel for every ticket. He can use the internal help desk knowledge base and time tested processes to resolve the issues quickly.

A well organised process enables the help desk technician to respond to a ticket quickly and resolve most of the customers' problems immediately.

Document Ticket Escalation Process

A good escalation process makes sure that when the helpdesk technician is not able to resolve a problem, he addresses ticket escalation promptly. The ticket gets send to the next level of customer support and the customer does not have to wait for days for it to get resolved.

Documentation should be an on-going effort

Documentation is not a onetime effort; it needs to be an on-going process. The help desk technicians should regularly optimize the issue resolution procedures and processes. This ensures that the customer issues are resolved promptly.

Note:

ISAHRE and ASHARE are two Societies for HVAC engineers.

ISHARE the Indian Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, was founded in 1981. **ASHRAE** was formed as the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers

These bodies not only have set standards for the HVAC engineers but also provide relevant certified training, which helps in professional growth at global level.

To know more about the these bodies, you may refer the following links:

https://ishrae.in/Home/about_ishrae

<https://www.ashrae.org/>





5. Soft Skills and Work Ethics

- Unit 5.1 – Effective Communication and Coordination at Work
- Unit 5.2 – Working Effectively and Maintaining Discipline at Work
- Unit 5.3 – Maintaining Social Diversity at Work



Key Learning Outcomes



By the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

1. State the importance of work ethics and workplace etiquette
2. State the importance of effective communication and interpersonal skills
3. Explain ways to maintain discipline in the workplace
4. Discuss the common reasons for interpersonal conflict and ways of managing them effectively.

UNIT 5.1: Effective Communication and Coordination at Work

Unit Objectives



By the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

1. Work effectively at the workplace.
2. Demonstrate practices related to gender and PwD sensitization.

5.1.1 Importance of Work Ethics and Workplace Etiquette

Workplace ethics are a set of moral and legal guidelines that organizations follow. These guidelines influence the way customers and employees interact with an organization. Workplace ethics essentially guide how an organization serves its clients and treats its employees. For example, if a company seeks to fulfil the promises it makes, it may develop processes and set up a robust support system to address this policy and build customer/client loyalty. To achieve this goal, the company may implement specific incentive programs for employees to encourage them to produce high-quality work and ensure the organization fulfils the promises it makes to its clients/ customers.

Many organizations, often the large ones, set detailed ethical codes to guide their operations and control how the organizational processes impact the stakeholders. These ethics usually help organizations maintain certain standards of responsibility, accountability, professionalism and among others, as they navigate through different challenges and day-to-day circumstances. By following these guidelines, organizations often experience several benefits that improve the lives of stakeholders, such as customers, employees, leaders, etc.

Examples of Common Workplace Ethics



Fig. 5.1.1 Examples of Common Workplace Ethics

Workplace ethics are essential for a successful organization with a satisfied and loyal team. High ethical standards help in ensuring all stakeholders, such as customers, investors, employees, and other individuals involved in the workplace operations, feel the organization is safeguarding their interests. By creating and implementing ethical guidelines, organizations can keep the best interests of their employees in mind while maintaining a positive influence on those they impact through their processes. As a result, employees maintain the organization's best interests by being ethical in their daily work duties. For example, fairly-treated employees of an organization who understand the organization's commitments to environmental sustainability are usually less likely to behave in a manner that causes harm to the environment. Thus, they help maintain a positive public image of the organization. It means that workplace ethics help in maintaining reciprocal relationships that benefit organizations at large and the individuals associated with and influenced by the organizational policies.

Benefits of Workplace Ethics

There are various benefits of implementing workplace ethics. When organizations hold themselves to high ethical standards, leaders, stakeholders, and the general public can experience significant improvements. Following are some of the key benefits of employing ethics in the workplace:



Fig. 5.1.2 Benefits of Workplace Ethics

5.1.2 Interpersonal Communication

Interpersonal communication is a process that involves sharing ideas and emotions with another person, both - verbally and non-verbally. It is essential to interact effectively with others in both personal and professional lives. In professional life or the workplace, strong interpersonal skills play a crucial role in achieving effective collaboration with colleagues.

Interpersonal Skills

Interpersonal skills, in other terms, are known as people skills, which are used to communicate and interact with others effectively. These are soft skills one uses to communicate with others and understand them. One uses these skills in daily life while interacting with people

Examples of Interpersonal Skills



Fig 5.1.3 Examples of Interpersonal Skills

Numerous interpersonal skills involve communication. Communication can be verbal, such as persuasion or tone of voice — or non-verbal, such as listening and body language.

Importance of Interpersonal Skills

Interpersonal skills are essential for communicating and collaborating with groups and individuals in both personal and professional life. People with strong interpersonal skills often are able to build good relationships and also tend to work well with others. Most people often enjoy working with co-workers who have good interpersonal skills.

Among other benefits of good interpersonal skills is the ability to solve problems and make the best decisions. One can use the ability to understand others and good interpersonal communication skills to find the best solution or make the best decisions in the interest of everyone involved. Strong interpersonal skills help individuals work well in teams and collaborate effectively. Usually, people who possess good interpersonal skills also tend to be good leaders, owing to their ability to communicate well with others and motivate the people around them.

Interpersonal communication is the key to working in a team environment and working collectively to achieve shared goals. Following are the interpersonal communication skills:

Verbal Communication

The ability to speak clearly, appropriately and confidently can help one communicate effectively with others. It is vital to select the appropriate vocabulary and tone for the target audience.

For example – one should speak formally and professionally in the work environment, while informal language is acceptable in an intimate environment with close friends and family. Also, one should avoid using complex or technical language while communicating with an audience that may not be familiar with it. Using simple language in a courteous tone helps achieve better communication, irrespective of the audience.

Active Listening

Active listening is defined as the ability to pay complete or undivided attention to someone when they speak and understand what they are saying. It is important for effective communication because without understanding what the speaker is saying, it becomes difficult to carry forward a conversation. One should ensure to use appropriate verbal and non-verbal responses, e.g. eye contact, nodding, or smiling, to show interest in what the speaker says. Active listening is also about paying attention to the speaker's body language and visual cues. Asking and answering questions is one of the best ways to demonstrate an interest in conversing with the other person.

Active listening is critical for communicating effectively without ambiguity. It helps one understand the information or instructions being shared. It may also encourage co-workers to share their ideas, which ultimately helps achieve collaboration.

Body Language

One's expression, posture, and gestures are as important as verbal communication. One should practice open body language to encourage positivity and trust while communicating. Open body language includes - maintaining eye contact, nodding, smiling and being comfortable. On the other hand, one should avoid closed body language, e.g. crossed arms, shifting eyes and restless behaviour.

Empathy

Empathy is the ability to understand the emotions, ideas and needs of others from their point of view. Empathy is also known as emotional intelligence. Empathetic people are good at being aware of others' emotions and compassionate when communicating with them. Being empathetic in the workplace can be good to boost the morale of employees and improve productivity. By showing empathy, one can gain the trust and respect of others.

Conflict Resolution

One can use interpersonal communication skills to help resolve disagreements and conflicts in the workplace. This involves the application of negotiation and persuasion skills to resolve arguments between conflicting parties. It is also important to evaluate and understand both sides of the argument by listening closely to everyone involved and finding an amicable solution acceptable to all.

Good conflict resolution skills can help one contribute to creating a collaborative and positive work environment. With the ability to resolve conflicts, one can earn the trust and respect of co-workers. These are essential communication skills that are vital for success at work:

Teamwork

Employees who communicate and work well in a team often have better chances of achieving success and common goals. Being a team player can help one avoid conflicts and improve productivity. One can do this by offering to help co-workers when required and asking for their feedback and ideas. When team members give their opinions or advice, one should positively receive and react to the opinions/advice. One should be optimistic and encouraging when working in groups.

Improving Interpersonal Skills

One can develop interpersonal skills by practising good communication and setting goals for improvement. One should consider the following tips to improve their interpersonal skills:

- One should ask for feedback from co-workers, managers, family or friends to figure out what needs improvement concerning their interpersonal skills.
- One can identify the areas of interpersonal communication to strengthen by watching others.
- One can learn and improve interpersonal skills by observing co-workers, company leaders and professionals who possess good interpersonal skills. This includes watching and listening to them to note how they communicate and the body language used by them. It is vital to note their speed of speaking, tone of voice, and the way they engage with others. One should practice and apply such traits in their own interactions and relationships.
- One should learn to control their emotions. If stressed or upset, one should wait until being calm to have a conversation. One is more likely to communicate effectively and confidently when not under stress.
- One can reflect on their personal and professional conversations to identify the scope of improvement and learn how to handle conversations better or communicate more clearly. It helps to consider whether one could have reacted differently in a particular situation or used specific words or positive body language more effectively. It is also vital to note the successful and positive interactions to understand why they are successful.
- One should practice interpersonal skills by putting oneself in positions where one can build relationships and use interpersonal skills. For example, one can join groups that have organized meetings or social events. These could be industry-specific groups or groups with members who share an interest or hobby.
- Paying attention to family, friends and co-workers and making efforts to interact with them helps a lot. One should complement their family, friends and co-workers on their good ideas, hard work and achievements. Trying to understand someone's interests and showing interest in knowing them can help one build strong interpersonal skills. Offering to help someone, especially in difficult situations, helps build stronger and positive workplace relationships.
- One should avoid distractions, such as a mobile phone, while interacting with someone. Giving someone full attention while avoiding distractions helps achieve a clear exchange of ideas. By listening with focus, one can understand and respond effectively.

- One can attend appropriate courses on interpersonal skills or sign up for workshops at work to improve interpersonal skills. One can find many resources online also, such as online videos.
- For personal mentoring, one can approach a trusted family member, friend, co-worker, or current/former employer. A person one looks up to with respect and admires is often a good choice to be selected as a mentor. One can even hire a professional career or communication coach.

Interpersonal communication skills often help one boost their morale, be more productive in the workplace, complete team projects smoothly and build positive and strong relationships with co-workers.

Notes



UNIT 5.2: Working Effectively and Maintaining Discipline at Work

Unit Objectives



By the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

- Discuss the importance of following organizational guidelines for dress code, time schedules, language usage and other behavioural aspects
- Explain the importance of working as per the workflow of the organization to receive instructions and report problems
- Explain the importance of conveying information/instructions as per defined protocols to the authorised persons/team members
- Explain the common workplace guidelines and legal requirements on non-disclosure and confidentiality of business-sensitive information
- Describe the process of reporting grievances and unethical conduct such as data breaches, sexual harassment at the workplace, etc.
- Discuss ways of dealing with heightened emotions of self and others.

5.2.1 Discipline at Work

Discipline is essential for organizational success. It helps improve productivity, reduce conflict and prevent misconduct in the workplace. It is important to have rules concerning workplace discipline and ensure that all employees comply with them. In the absence of discipline, a workplace may experience conflicts, bullying, unethical behaviour and poor employee performance. An efficient workplace disciplinary process helps create transparency in the organization. Benefits of disciplinary standards:

All employees follow the same rules which helps establish uniformity and equality in the workplace

Managers and supervisors have defined guidelines on what action to take while initiating disciplinary action

With well-defined and enforced disciplinary rules, an organization can avoid various safety, security, reputational risks

Fig 5.2.1 Benefits of Disciplinary Standards

Maintaining an organized and cohesive workforce requires maintaining discipline in both personal and professional behaviour. It is important to follow the appropriate measures to keep employees in line without affecting their morale.

Defining Discipline

The first and crucial step in maintaining workplace discipline is to define what is meant by discipline. It helps to evaluate common discipline problems and devise guidelines for handling them effectively.

Among a number of areas, discipline usually covers:

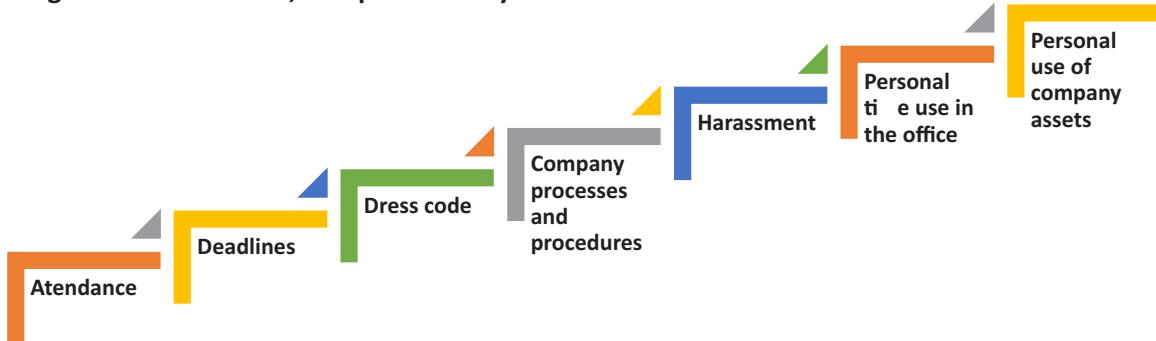


Fig 5.2.2 Examples of Workplace Discipline

According to demography and local issues, it may also include substance use and related issues.

It is vital for a workplace to have an employee handbook or company policy guide, to serve as a rulebook for employees to follow. The employee handbook/ company policy guide should be reviewed and updated periodically according to any issues or areas, or concerns identified concerning workplace discipline. Such manuals should also cover all the laws and regulations governing workplace behaviour.

Defining and documenting workplace rules aids in their implementation, ensuring little or no ambiguity. All employees in a workplace should also have easy access to the workplace guidelines so that they can refer to them to get clarity whenever required. To maintain discipline at work, it is also critical to ensure uniform application of workplace guidelines to all employees without exception.

5.2.2 Employee Code of Conduct

The employee code of conduct manual serves as a guide for employees to inform them regarding the behaviour expected from them at work. It helps create a good work environment with consistent behaviour from employees. The manual should list examples of acceptable and not acceptable behaviours at work. The code of conduct should be discussed with employees so that they have the clarifications required.

For example, an organization may create guidelines concerning the conduct with clients to ensure no contact is made with them except for business purposes, also prescribing the use of appropriate means of communication.

Employees should have a clear understanding concerning their job responsibilities and the behaviour expected from them with all stakeholders, e.g. company personnel, clients and associated third parties. It is critical to have documented guidelines for employees to follow concerning all aspects of work. It should also document the disciplinary action to be followed in case of non-compliance, e.g. verbal and

then written warning, temporary suspension or eventual termination of service in case of repeated non-compliance with the employee code of conduct. Employees should know what the company rules are and what will happen if they break the rules. However, disciplinary action should be initiated only when reasonably required to avoid its misuse for employee harassment.

There should also be an effective mechanism for employees to raise their concerns/ grievances and have them addressed while maintaining privacy, as required, e.g. raising concerns regarding the behaviour of a co-worker.

The employee code of conduct manual must be duly reviewed and approved by the concerned stakeholders, such as the Human Resources (HR) department and company executives.

5.2.3 Interpersonal Conflicts

Interpersonal conflict is any type of conflict between two or more people. These are found in both - personal and professional relationships - among friends, family, and co-workers. In the workplace, interpersonal conflict is often observed when a person or group of people interfere with another person's attempts at completing assignments and achieving goals. It is critical to resolve conflicts in the workplace to boost the morale of employees, repair working relationships among them, and improve customer satisfaction.

Reasons for Workplace Conflicts

Workplace conflicts are often observed when two or more people have different points of view. This can happen between managers, co-workers, or clients and customers. In general, interpersonal conflicts are caused by a lack of communication or unclear communication.

Some of the leading reasons for workplace conflicts are:

- Difference in values
- Personality clashes
- Poor communication

Example of poor communication – if a manager reassigns a task to another employee without communicating with the employee to whom it was originally assigned, interpersonal conflict can arise among them. This may potentially make the first employee, i.e. who was originally assigned the task, feel slighted and mistrusted by the manager. It may even cause animosity in the first employee toward the employee who has now been assigned the task.

Types of Interpersonal Conflict

Following are the four types of interpersonal conflicts:

a. **Policy-related interpersonal conflict**

When a conflict relates to a decision or situation that involves both parties, it can be called a policy-related interpersonal conflict. Example – two people or groups working on the same project, trying to adopt different approaches. To resolve policy-related interpersonal conflicts, the parties involved should try to look for a win-win situation or make a compromise. This is especially critical to resolve trivial issues so that work is not affected and common goals are achieved.

b. **Pseudo-conflicts**

Pseudo-conflict arises when two people or groups want different things and cannot reach an agreement. Pseudo-conflicts usually involve trivial disagreements that tend to hide the root of the issue.

c. **Ego-related interpersonal conflicts**

In ego conflicts, losing the argument may hurt or damage a person's pride. Sometimes ego conflicts arise when a number of small conflicts pile up on being left unresolved. To resolve ego-related conflicts, it's best to find the root of the issue and work towards a resolution.

d. **Value-related interpersonal conflicts**

Sometimes conflicts may occur between people when they have different value systems. Such conflicts can be difficult to identify initially, making the people involved think the other party is being disagreeable or stubborn, wherein they just have different values. Some co-workers may highly value their personal/ family time after office that they may be unreachable to clients during non-office hours, while others may place a high value on client satisfaction and may still be available for clients during non-office hours. Conflict may arise among such people when they may be required to coordinate to help a client during after-office hours. Value-related interpersonal conflicts are often difficult to settle since neither party likes to compromise.

Resolving Interpersonal Conflicts

Conflicts are usually likely in the workplace; they can, however, be prevented. Often resolving interpersonal conflicts through open communication helps build a stronger relationship, paving the way for effective coordination and success. Some ways to resolve interpersonal conflict:

- **Communication** - A great way to resolve interpersonal conflicts is for the opposing parties to listen to one another's opinions and understand their viewpoints. Meeting in person and keeping the conversation goal-oriented is important. One can have effective communication by following some measures, e.g. staying on the topic, listening actively, being mindful of the body language, maintaining eye contact, etc.

- **Active Listening** - One should patiently listen to what the other person is saying without interrupting or talking over them. It helps one display empathy and get to the root of the issue. Asking questions to seek clarification when required helps in clear communication and conveys to the other person that one is listening to them. Practising active listening is a great way to improve one's communication skills.
- **Displaying Empathy** - Listening attentively and identifying the anxieties/ issues of co-workers is a great way to show empathy and concern. It is essential to understand their feelings and actions to encourage honesty and avoid future conflict.
- **Not Holding Grudges** - With different types of people and personalities in a workplace, it is common for co-workers to have conflicts. It is best to accept the difference in opinions and move on. Being forgiving and letting go of grudges allows one to focus on the positive side of things and perform better at work.

Work-related interpersonal conflicts can be complicated because different people have different leadership styles, personality characteristics, job responsibilities and ways in which they interact. One should learn to look above interpersonal conflicts, resolving them to ensure work goals and environment are not affected.

5.2.4 Importance of Following Organizational Guidelines

Policies and procedures or organizational guidelines are essential for any organization. These provide a road map for the operations of the organization. These are also critical in ensuring compliance with the applicable laws and regulations by guiding the decision-making process and business operations.

Organizational guidelines help bring uniformity to the operations of an organization, which helps reduce the risk of unwanted and unexpected events. These determine how employees are supposed to behave at work, which ultimately helps the business achieve its objectives efficiently.

However, organizational guidelines are ineffective and fail to serve their purpose if they are not followed. Many people don't like the idea of following and abiding by specific guidelines. Such people should be made to understand the benefits of following the organizational guidelines. Some of the key benefits are given below:

With well-defined organizational guidelines in place, no individual can act arbitrarily, irrespective of their position in the organization. All individuals will know the pros and cons of taking certain actions and what to expect in case of unacceptable behaviour. Benefits of following organizational guidelines:

- **Consistent processes and structures** - Organization guidelines help maintain consistency in operations, avoiding any disorder. When all employees follow the organizational guidelines, an organization can run smoothly. These ensure that people in different job roles operate as they are supposed to, knowing what they are responsible for, what is expected of them, and what they can expect from their supervisors and co-workers. With clarity in mind, they can do their jobs with confidence and excellence. With every person working the way intended, it's easy to minimise errors.

With all the staff following organizational guidelines, the organization has a better scope of using time and resources more effectively and efficiently. This allows the organization to grow and achieve its objectives.

- **Better quality service** - By following organizational guidelines, employees perform their duties correctly as per the defined job responsibilities. It helps enhance the quality of the organization's products and services, helping improve the organization's reputation. Working with a reputable organization, employees can take pride in their work and know they are contributing to the reputation.
- **A safer workplace** - When all employees follow organizational guidelines, it becomes easy to minimise workplace incidents and accidents. It reduces the liabilities associated with risks for the organization and limits the interruptions in operations. Employees also feel comfortable and safe in the workplace, knowing their co-workers are ensuring safety at work by following the applicable guidelines.

Different organizations may have different guidelines on dress code, time schedules, language usage, etc. For example – certain organizations in a client-dealing business requiring employees to meet clients personally follow a strict dress code asking their employees to wear formal business attire. Similarly, organizations operating in specific regions may require their employees to use the dominant regional language of the particular region to build rapport with customers and serve them better. Certain organizations, such as banks, often give preference to candidates with knowledge of the regional language during hiring.

Working hours may also differ from one organization to another, with some requiring employees to work extra compared to others. One should follow the organizational guidelines concerning all the aspects of the employment to ensure a cohesive work environment.

5.2.5 Workflow

Workflow is the order of steps from the beginning to the end of a task or work process. In other words, it is the way a particular type of work is organised or the order of stages in a particular work process.

Workflows can help simplify and automate repeatable business tasks, helping improve efficiency and minimise the room for errors. With workflows in place, managers can make quick and smart decisions while employees can collaborate more productively.

Other than the order that workflows create in a business, these have several other benefits, such as:

- Identifying Redundancies - Mapping out work processes in a workflow allows one to get a clear, top-level view of a business. It allows one to identify and remove redundant or unproductive processes.

Workflow gives greater insights into business processes. Utilizing such useful insights, one can improve work processes and the bottom line of the business. In many businesses, there are many unnecessary and redundant tasks that take place daily. Once an organization has insight into its processes while preparing workflow, it can determine which activities are really necessary.

Identifying and eliminating redundant tasks creates value for a business. With redundant tasks and processes eliminated, an organization can focus on what's important to the business.

- Increase in Accountability and Reduction in Micromanagement - Micromanagement often causes problems in a business setting as most employees don't like being micromanaged, and even many managers don't like the practice. Micromanagement is often identified as one of the reasons why people quit their job.

However, the need for micromanagement can be minimized by clearly mapping out the workflow. This way, every individual in a team knows what tasks need to be completed and by when and who is responsible for completing them. This makes employees more accountable also.

With clearly defined workflow processes, managers don't have to spend much time micromanaging their employees, who don't have to approach the manager to know what the further steps are. Following a workflow, employees know what is going on and what needs to be done. This, in turn, may help increase the job satisfaction of everyone involved while improving the relationships between management and employees.

- Improved Communication - Communication at work is critical because it affects all aspects of an organization. There are instances when the main conflict in an organization originates from miscommunication, e.g. the management and employees disagreeing on an aspect, despite pursuing the same objectives. Poor communication is a common workplace issue that is often not dealt with.
- This highlights why workflow is important. Workplace communication dramatically can increase with the visibility of processes and accountability. It helps make the daily operations smoother overall.

- Better Customer Service - Customers or clients are central to a business. Therefore, it is imperative to find and improve ways to improve customer experience. Relying on outdated manual systems may cause customer requests or complaints to be overlooked, with dissatisfied customers taking their business elsewhere. However, following a well-researched and defined workflow can help improve the quality of customer service.

By automating workflows and processes, an organization can also reduce the likelihood of human error. This also helps improve the quality of products or services over time, resulting in a better customer experience.

5.2.6 Following Instructions and Reporting Problems

All organizations follow a hierarchy, with most employees reporting to a manager or supervisor. For organizational success, it is vital for employees to follow the instructions of their manager or supervisor. They should ensure they perform their duties as per the given instructions to help achieve the common objectives of the organization and deliver quality service or products. This consequently helps maintain the reputation of the organization.

It is also important to be vigilant and identify problems at work or with the organizational work processes. One should deal with the identified within their limits of authority and report out of authority problems to the manager/ supervisor or the concerned person for a prompt resolution to minimise the impact on customers/clients and business.

5.2.7 Information or Data Sharing

Information or data is critical to all organizations. Depending on the nature of its business, an organization may hold different types of data, e.g. personal data of customers or client data concerning their business operations and contacts. It is vital to effective measures for the appropriate handling of different types of data, ensuring its protection from unauthorized access and consequent misuse.

One should access certain data only if authorised to do so. The same is applicable when sharing data which must be shared only with the people authorised to receive it to use it for a specific purpose as per their job role and organizational guidelines. For example – one should be extra cautious while sharing business data with any third parties to ensure they get access only to the limited data they need as per any agreements with them. It is also critical to monitor how the recipient of the data uses it, which should strictly be as per the organizational guidelines. It is a best practice to share appropriate instructions with the recipient of data to ensure they are aware of the purpose with which data is being shared with them and how they are supposed to use and handle it. Any misuse of data must be identified and reported promptly to the appropriate person to minimise any damage arising out of data misuse.

These days most organizations require their employees and business partners or associated third parties to sign and accept the relevant agreement on the non-disclosure of business-sensitive information. In simple terms, business-sensitive information is confidential information. It is proprietary business information collected or created during the course of conducting business, including information about the business, e.g. proposed investments, intellectual property, trade secrets, or plans for a merger and information related to its clients. Business-sensitive information may sometimes also include information regarding a business's competitors in an industry.

The release of business-sensitive information to competitors or the general public poses a risk to a business. For example, information regarding plans for a merger could be harmful to a business if a competitor gets access to it.

5.2.8 Reporting Issues at Work

Most organizations have defined guidelines on appropriate reporting processes to be followed for reporting different types of issues. For example – one can report any grievances or dissatisfaction concerning co-workers to their manager/supervisor, e.g. data breaches or unethical conduct. If the concern is not addressed, then the employee should follow the organizational guidelines and hierarchy for the escalation of such issues that are not addressed appropriately.

For example – any concern related to sexual harassment at the workplace should be escalated to the concerned spokesperson, such as Human Resources (HR) representative, and if not satisfied with the action taken, it should be reported to the senior management for their consideration and prompt action.

5.2.9 Dealing with Heightened Emotions

Humans are emotional beings. There may be occasions when one is overwhelmed by emotions and is unable to suppress them. However, there may be situations when one must manage emotions well, particularly at work.

Stress in one's personal and professional life may often cause emotional outbursts at work. Managing one's emotions well, particularly the negative ones, is often seen as a measure of one's professionalism. Anger, dislike, frustration, worry, and unhappiness are the most common negative emotions experienced at work.

Ways to manage negative emotions at work:

- **Compartmentalisation** – It's about not confining emotions to different aspects of one's life. For example, not letting negative emotions from personal life affect work-life and vice versa. One should try to leave personal matters and issues at home. One should train their mind to let go of personal matters before reaching work. Similarly, one can compartmentalise work-related stresses so that negative emotions from work don't affect one's personal life.

- **Deep breathing and relaxation** – Deep breathing helps with anxiety, worry, frustration and anger. One should take deep breaths, slowly count to ten - inhaling and exhaling until one calms down. One can also take a walk to calm down or listen to relaxing music. Talking to someone and sharing concerns also helps one calm down.
- **The 10-second rule** - This is particularly helpful in controlling anger and frustration. When one feels their temper rising, they should count to 10 to calm down and recompose. If possible, one should move away to allow temper to come down.
- **Clarify** - It is always good to clarify before reacting, as it may be a simple case of misunderstanding or miscommunication.
- **Physical activity** - Instead of losing temper, one should plan to exercise, such as running or going to the gym, to let the anger out. Exercise is also a great way to enhance mood and release any physical tension in the body.
- **Practising restraint** - One should avoid replying or making a decision when angry, not allowing anger or unhappiness to cloud one's judgement. It may be best to pause any communication while one is angry, e.g. not communicating over email when angry or upset.
- **Knowing one's triggers** - It helps when one is able to recognise what upsets or angers them. This way, one can prepare to remain calm and plan their reaction should a situation occur. One may even be able to anticipate the other party's reaction.
- **Be respectful** - One should treat their colleagues the same way one would like to be treated. If the other person is rude, one need not reciprocate. It is possible to stay gracious, firm and assertive without being aggressive. Sometimes, rude people back away when they don't get a reaction from the person they are arguing with.
- **Apologise for any emotional outburst** – Sometimes, one can get overwhelmed by emotions, reacting with an emotional outburst. In such a case, one should accept responsibility and apologise immediately to the affected persons without being defensive.
- **Doing away with negative emotions** - It is recommended to let go of anger, frustration and unhappiness at the end of every workday. Harbouring negative emotions affects one emotionally, affecting their job performance also. Engaging in enjoyable activities after work is a good stress reliever.

Notes



UNIT 5.3: Maintaining Social Diversity at Work

Unit Objectives



By the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

1. Explain the concept and importance of gender sensitivity and equality.
2. Discuss ways to create sensitivity for different genders and Persons with Disabilities (PWD).

5.3.1 Gender Sensitivity

Gender sensitivity is the act of being sensitive towards people and their thoughts regarding gender. It ensures that people know the accurate meaning of gender equality, and one's gender should not be given priority over their capabilities.



Fig 5.3.1 Gender Equality

Women are an important source of labour in many sectors, yet they have limited access to resources and benefits. Women should receive the same benefits and access to resources as men. A business can improve its productivity and quality of work by providing better support and opportunities to women.

Important Terms

- **Gender Sensitivity** - Gender sensitivity is the act of being sensitive to the ways people think about gender.
- **Gender Equality** - It means persons of any gender enjoy equal opportunities, responsibilities, and rights in all areas of life.
- **Gender Discrimination** – It means treating an individual unequally or disadvantageously based on their gender, e.g. paying different wages to men and women for similar or equal job positions.

Strategies for Enhancing Gender Equity

To enhance gender equity, one should:

- Follow gender-neutral practices at all levels at work.
- Participate together in decision-making.
- Help in promoting women's participation in different forums.
- Assist women in getting exposure to relevant skills and practices.
- Assist women in capacity building by mentoring, coaching or motivating them, as appropriate.
- Assist in the formation and operation of women support groups.
- Assist in the implementation of women-centric programmes.
- Combine technical training with reproductive health and nutrition for coffee farming households.
- Assist in making a work environment that is healthy, safe, and free from discrimination.

Bridging Gender Differences

Men and women react and communicate very differently. Thus, there are some work differences as both genders have their style and method of handling a situation.

Although, understanding and maturity vary from person to person, even between these genders, based on their knowledge, education, experience, culture, age, and upbringing, as well as how one's brain functions over a thought or problem.

In order to bridge the gap, one should:

- Not categorize all men and women in one way.
- Be aware of the verbal and non-verbal styles of communication of every gender to avoid any miscommunication and work better.
- Be aware of partial behaviour and avoid it.
- Encourage co-workers of different genders to make room by providing space to others.

Ways to reduce Gender Discrimination

- Effective steps against sexual harassment by the concerned authorities and general public.
- Gender stereotypes are how society expects people to act based on their gender. This can only be reduced by adopting appropriate behaviour and the right attitude.
- Objectification of females must be abolished.

Ways to Promote Gender Sensitivity in the Workplace

Practices that promote gender diversity should be adopted and promoted.

- All genders should receive equal responsibilities, rights, and privileges.
- All genders should have equal pay for similar or the same job roles/ positions.
- Strict and effective workplace harassment policies should be developed and implemented.
- An open-minded and stress-free work environment should be available to all the employees, irrespective of their gender.
- Women should be encouraged to go ahead in every field of work and assume leadership roles.
- Follow appropriate measures for women's empowerment.
- Men should be taught to be sensitive to women and mindful of their rights.

5.3.2 PwD Sensitivity

Some individuals are born with a disability, while others may become disabled due to an accident, illness or as they get old. People with Disabilities (PWD) may have one or more areas in which their functioning is affected. A disability can affect hearing, sight, communication, breathing, understanding, mobility, balance, and concentration or may include the loss of a limb. A disability may contribute to how a person feels and affect their mental health

Important Terms

·Persons with Disabilities (PWD) – Persons with Disabilities means a person suffering from not less than 40% of any disability as certified by a medical authority.

·Types of Disability:

- a. Blindness – Visually impaired
- b. Low Vision
- c. Leprosy Cured
- d. Hearing impairment
- e. Locomotor disability
- f. Mental retardation
- g. Mental illness

PwD Sensitivity

PwD sensitivity promotes empathy, etiquette and equal participation of individuals and organizations while working with individuals with a disability, e.g. sensory, physical or intellectual.

Ways to be PwD Sensitive

To be sensitive to PwD, one should:

- Be respectful to all Persons with Disabilities (PwD) and communicate in a way that reflects PwD sensitivity.
- Always be supportive and kind towards a PwD with their daily chores.
- Be ready to assist a PwD to help them avail of any benefit/ livelihood opportunity/ training or any kind that helps them grow.
- Encourage and try to make things easier and accessible to PwD so that they can work without or with minimum help.
- Protest where feasible and report any wrong act/behaviour against any PwD to the appropriate authority.
- Learn and follow the laws, acts, and policies relevant to PwD.

Appropriate Verbal Communication

As part of appropriate verbal communication with all genders and PwD, one should:

- Talk to all genders and PwD respectfully, maintaining a normal tone of voice with appropriate politeness. It is important to ensure one's tone of voice does not have hints of sarcasm, anger, or unwelcome affection.
- Avoid being too self-conscious concerning the words to use while also ensuring not to use words that imply one's superiority over the other.
- Make no difference between a PwD and their caretaker. Treat PwD like adults and talk to them directly.
- Ask a PwD if they need any assistance instead of assuming they need it and offering assistance spontaneously.

Appropriate Non-verbal Communication

Non-verbal communication is essentially the way someone communicates through their body language. These include:

- **Facial expressions** - The human face is quite expressive, capable of conveying many emotions without using words. Facial expressions must usually be maintained neutral and should change according to the situation, e.g. smile as a gesture of greeting.
- **Body posture and movement** - One should be mindful of how to sit, stand, walk, or hold their head. For example - one should sit and walk straight in a composed manner. The way one moves and carries self, communicates a lot to others. This type of non-verbal communication includes one's posture, bearing, stance, and subtle movements.

- **Gestures** - One should be very careful with their gestures, e.g. waving, pointing, beckoning, or using one's hands while speaking. One should use appropriate and positive gestures to maintain respect for the other person while being aware that a gesture may have different meanings in different cultures.
- **Eye contact** - Eye contact is particularly significant in non-verbal communication. The way someone looks at someone else may communicate many things, such as interest, hostility, affection or attraction. Eye contact is vital for maintaining the flow of conversation and for understanding the other person's interest and response. One should maintain appropriate eye contact, ensuring not to stare or look over the shoulders. To maintain respect, one should sit or stand at the other person's eye level to make eye contact.
- **Touch** - Touch is a very sensitive type of non-verbal communication. Examples are - handshakes, hugs, pat on the back or head, gripping the arm, etc. A firm handshake indicates interest, while a weak handshake indicates the opposite. One should be extra cautious not to touch others inappropriately and avoid touching them inadvertently by maintaining a safe distance.

Rights of PwD

PwD have the right to respect and human dignity. Irrespective of the nature and seriousness of their disabilities, PwD have the same fundamental rights as others, such as:

- Disabled persons have the same civil and political rights as other people
- Disabled persons are entitled to the measures designed to enable them to become as self-dependent as possible
- Disabled persons have the right to economic and social security
- Disabled persons have the right to live with their families or foster parents and participate in all social and creative activities.
- Disabled persons are protected against all exploitation and treatment of discriminatory and abusive nature.

Making Workplace PwD Friendly

- One should not make PwD feel uncomfortable by giving too little or too much attention
- One should use a normal tone while communicating with a PwD and treat them as all others keeping in mind their limitations and type of disability
- Any help should be provided only when asked for by a PwD
- One should help in ensuring the health and well-being of PwD.

Expected Employer Behaviour

Some of the common behavioural traits that employees expect from their employers are:

- Cooperation: No work is successful without cooperation from the employer's side. Cooperation helps to understand the job role better and complete it within the given timeline.
- Polite language: Polite language is always welcomed at work. This is a basic aspect that everybody expects.
- Positive Attitude: Employers with a positive attitude can supervise the work of the employees and act as a helping hand to accomplish the given task. A person with a positive attitude looks at the best qualities in others and helps them gain success.
- Unbiased behaviour: Employers should always remain fair towards all their employees. One should not adopt practices to favour one employee while neglecting or ignoring the other. This might create animosity among co-workers.
- Decent behaviour: The employer should never improperly present oneself before the employee. One should always respect each other's presence and behave accordingly. The employer should not speak or act in a manner that may make the employee feel uneasy, insulted, and insecure.

Exercise

1. List down three examples of workplace ethics.
2. List down three examples of interpersonal skills.
3. Identify two reasons for workplace conflicts.
4. Identify two ways of resolving interpersonal conflicts
5. List down two ways of dealing with heightened emotions at work.
6. List down two types of non-verbal communication.

Notes





Skilling India in Electronics

6. Basic Health and Safety Practices

Unit 6.1 - Workplace Hazards

Unit 6.2 - Fire Safety

Unit 6.3 - First Aid

Unit 6.4 - Waste Management



ELE/N1002

Key Learning Outcomes



By the end of this module, participants will be able to:

1. Discuss job-site hazards, risks and accidents
2. Explain the organizational safety procedures for maintaining electrical safety, handling tools and hazardous materials
3. Describe how to interpret warning signs while accessing sensitive work areas
4. Explain the importance of good housekeeping
5. Describe the importance of maintaining appropriate postures while lifting heavy objects
6. List the types of fire and fire extinguishers
7. Describe the concept of waste management and methods of disposing of hazardous waste
8. List the common sources of pollution and ways to minimize them
9. Elaborate on electronic waste disposal procedures
10. Explain how to administer appropriate first aid to victims in case of bleeding, burns, choking, electric shock, poisoning and also administer first aid to victims in case of a heart attack or cardiac arrest due to electric shock

UNIT 6.1: Workplace Hazards

Unit Objectives



By the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

- Discuss job-site hazards, risks and accidents
- Explain the organizational safety procedures for maintaining electrical safety, handling tools and hazardous materials
- Describe how to interpret warning signs while accessing sensitive work areas
- Explain the importance of good housekeeping
- Describe the importance of maintaining appropriate postures while lifting heavy objects
- Explain safe handling of tools and Personal Protective Equipment to be used.

6.1.1 Workplace Safety

Workplace safety is important to be established for creating a safe and secure working for the workers. The workplace has to be administered as per the rules of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA). It refers to monitoring the working environment and all hazardous factors that impact employees' safety, health, and well-being. It is important to provide a safe working environment to the employees to increase their productivity, wellness, skills, etc.

The benefits of workplace safety are:

- Employee retention increases if they are provided with a safe working environment.
- Failure to follow OSHA's laws and guidelines can result in significant legal and financial consequences.
- A safe environment enables employees to stay invested in their work and increases productivity.
- Employer branding and company reputation can both benefit from a safe working environment.

6.1.2 Workplace Hazards

A workplace is a situation that has the potential to cause harm or injury to the workers and damage the tools or property of the workplace. Hazards exist in every workplace and can come from a variety of sources. Finding and removing them is an important component of making a safe workplace.

Common Workplace Hazards

The common workplace hazards are:

- Biological: The threats caused by biological agents like viruses, bacteria, animals, plants, insects and also humans, are known as biological hazards.

- **Chemical:** Chemical hazard is the hazard of inhaling various chemicals, liquids and solvents. Skin irritation, respiratory system irritation, blindness, corrosion, and explosions are all possible health and physical consequences of these dangers.
- **Mechanical:** Mechanical Hazards comprise the injuries that can be caused by the moving parts of machinery, plant or equipment.
- **Psychological:** Psychological hazards are occupational hazards caused by stress, harassment, and violence.
- **Physical:** The threats that can cause physical damage to people is called physical hazard. These include unsafe conditions that can cause injury, illness and death.
- **Ergonomic:** Ergonomic Hazards are the hazards of the workplace caused due to awkward posture, forceful motion, stationary position, direct pressure, vibration, extreme temperature, noise, work stress, etc.

Workplace Hazards Analysis

A workplace hazard analysis is a method of identifying risks before they occur by focusing on occupational tasks. It focuses on the worker's relationship with the task, the tools, and the work environment. After identifying the hazards of the workplace, organisations shall try to eliminate or minimize them to an acceptable level of risk.

Control Measures of Workplace Hazards

Control measures are actions that can be taken to reduce the risk of being exposed to the hazard. Elimination, Substitution, Engineering Controls, Administrative Controls, and Personal Protective Equipment are the five general categories of control measures.

- **Elimination:** The most successful control technique is to eliminate a specific hazard or hazardous work procedure or prevent it from entering the workplace.
- **Substitution:** Substitution is the process of replacing something harmful with something less hazardous. While substituting the hazard may not eliminate all of the risks associated with the process or activity, it will reduce the overall harm or health impacts.
- **Engineering Controls:** Engineered controls protect workers by eliminating hazardous situations or creating a barrier between the worker and the hazard, or removing the hazard from the person.
- **Administrative Controls:** To reduce exposure to hazards, administrative controls limit the length of time spent working on a hazardous task that might be used in combination with other measures of control.
- **Personal Protective Equipment:** Personal protective equipment protects users from health and safety hazards at work. It includes items like safety helmets, gloves, eye protection, etc.

6.1.3 Risk for a Drone Technician

A drone technician may require to repair the propeller, motor and its mount, battery, mainboards, processor, booms, avionics, camera, sensors, chassis, wiring and landing gear. A technician may face some risks while repairing the drones' equipment.

- The technician is susceptible to being physically harmed by propellers.
- Direct contact with exposed electrical circuits can injure the person.
- If the skin gets in touch with the heat generated from electric arcs, it burns the internal tissues.
- Major electrical injuries can occur due to poorly installed electrical equipment, faulty wiring, overloaded or overheated outlets, use of extension cables, incorrect use of replacement fuses, use of equipment with wet hands, etc.

6.1.4 Workplace Warning Signs

A Hazard sign is defined as 'information or instruction about health and safety at work on a signboard, an illuminated sign or sound signal, a verbal communication or hand signal.'

There are four different types of safety signs:

- Prohibition / Danger Alarm Signs
- Mandatory Signs
- Warning Signs
- And Emergency

1. Prohibition Signs: A "prohibition sign" is a safety sign that prohibits behaviour that is likely to endanger one's health or safety. The colour red is necessary for these health and safety signs. Only what or who is forbidden should be displayed on a restriction sign.



Fig. 6.1.1. Prohibition Warning Signs

2. Mandatory Signs:

Mandatory signs give clear directions that must be followed. The icons are white circles that have been reversed out of a blue circle. On a white background, the text is black.



Fig. 6.1.2. Mandatory Signs

3. Warning Signs

Warning signs are the safety information communication signs. They are shown as a 'yellow colour triangle'.



Fig. 6.1.3. Warning Signs

4. Emergency Signs

The location or routes to emergency facilities are indicated by emergency signs. These signs have a green backdrop with a white emblem or writing. These signs convey basic information and frequently refer to housekeeping, company procedures, or logistics.



Fig. 6.1.4. Emergency Signs

6.1.5 Cleanliness in the Workplace

Workplace cleanliness maintenance creates a healthy, efficient and productive environment for the employees. Cleanliness at the workplace is hindered by some elements like cluttered desks, leftover food, waste paper, etc. A tidy workplace is said to improve employee professionalism and enthusiasm while also encouraging a healthy working environment.

Benefits of cleanliness in the workplace:

1. Productivity: Cleanliness in the workplace can bring a sense of belonging to the employees, also motivating and boosting the morale of the employees. This results in increasing their productivity.
2. Employee Well-being: Employee well-being can be improved by providing a clean work environment. Employees use fewer sick days in a workplace where litter and waste are properly disposed of, and surfaces are cleaned regularly, resulting in increased overall productivity.
3. Positive Impression: Cleanliness and orderliness in the workplace provide a positive impression on both employees and visitors.
4. Cost saving: By maintaining acceptable levels of cleanliness in the workplace, businesses can save money on cleaning bills and renovations, which may become necessary if the premises are not properly kept.

Reasons for Cleaning the Workplace

- Cleaning of dry floors, mostly to prevent workplace slips and falls.
- Disinfectants stop bacteria in their tracks, preventing the spread of infections and illness.
- Proper air filtration decreases hazardous substance exposures such as dust and fumes.
- Light fixture cleaning improves lighting efficiency.
- Using environmentally friendly cleaning chemicals that are safer for both personnel and the environment.
- Work environments are kept clean by properly disposing of garbage and recyclable items.

6.1.6 Lifting and Handling of Heavy Loads

Musculoskeletal Injuries (MSIs), such as sprains and strains, can occur while lifting, handling, or carrying objects at work. When bending, twisting, uncomfortable postures and lifting heavy objects are involved, the risk of injury increases. Ergonomic controls can help to lower the risk of injury and potentially prevent it.

Types of injuries caused while lifting heavy objects:

- Cuts and abrasions are caused by rough surfaces.
- Crushing of feet or hands.
- Strain to muscles and joints

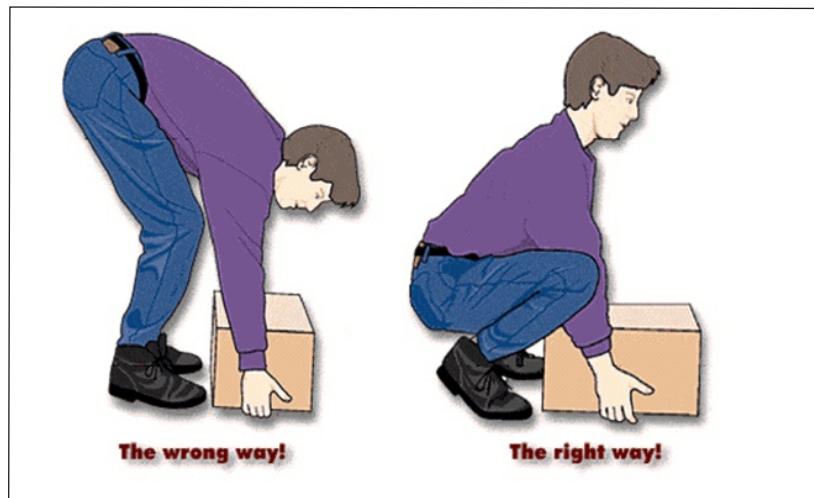


Fig. 6.1.5. Lifting loads echnique

Preparing to lift

A load that appears light enough to bear at first will grow increasingly heavier as one carries it further. The person carrying the weight should be able to see over or around it at all times.

The amount of weight a person can lift, depends on their age, physique, and health

It also depends on whether or not the person is used to lifting and moving hefty objects.

Common Causes of Back Injuries

The Most Common Causes of Back Injuries are:

- 1) Inadequate Training:** The individual raising the load receives no sufficient training or guidance.
- 2) Lack of awareness of technique:** The most common cause of back pain is incorrect twisting and posture, which causes back strain.
- 3) Load size:** The load size to consider before lifting. If the burden is too much for one's capacity or handling, their back may be strained and damaged.
- 4) Physical Strength:** Depending on their muscle power, various persons have varied physical strengths. One must be aware of their limitations.
- 5) Teamwork:** The operation of a workplace is all about working together. When opposed to a single person lifting a load, two people can lift it more easily and without difficulty. If one of two people isn't lifting it properly, the other or both of them will suffer back injuries as a result of the extra strain.

Techniques for Lifting Heavy Objects

Technique	Demonstration
<p>1. Ensure one has a wide base of support before lifting the heavy object. Ensure one's feet are shoulder-width apart, and one foot is slightly ahead of the other at all times. This will help one maintain a good balance during the lifting of heavy objects. This is known as the Karate Stance.</p>	
<p>2. Squat down as near to the object as possible when one is ready to lift it, bending at the hips and knees with the buttocks out. If the object is really heavy, one may wish to place one leg on the floor and the other bent at a straight angle in front of them.</p>	

3. Maintain proper posture as one begin to lift upward. To do so, one should keep their back straight, chest out, and shoulders back while gazing straight ahead.



4. By straightening one's hips and knees, slowly elevate the thing (not the back). As one rises, they should extend their legs and exhale. Lift the heavy object without twisting the body or bending forward.



5. Do not lift bending forward.



6. Hold the load close to the body.



7. Never lift heavy objects above the shoulder	
8. Use the feet (not the body) to change direction, taking slow, small steps.	
9. Set down the heavy object carefully, squatting with the knees and hips only.	

Table 6.1.1 Techniques for lifting heavy objects

³Source:<https://www.braceability.com/blogs/articles/7-prop-heavy-lifttechniques>

6.1.7 Safe Handling of Tools

Workers should be trained on how to use tools safely. When tools are misplaced or handled incorrectly by workers, they can be dangerous. The following are some suggestions from the National Safety Council for safe tool handling when they are not in use:

- Never carry tools up or down a ladder in a way that makes it difficult to grip them. Instead of being carried by the worker, tools should be lifted up and down using a bucket or strong bag.
- Tools should never be tossed but should be properly passed from one employee to the next. Pointed tools should be passed with the handles facing the receiver or in their carrier.
- When turning and moving around the workplace, workers carrying large tools or equipment on their shoulders should pay particular attention to clearances.
- Pointed tools such as chisels and screwdrivers should never be kept in a worker's pocket. They can be carried in a toolbox, pointing down in a tool belt or pocket tool bag, or in hand with the tip always held away from the body.
- Tools should always be stored while not in use. People below are put in danger when tools are left sitting around on an elevated structure, such as a scaffold. In situations when there is a lot of vibration, this risk increases.

6.1.8 Personal Protective Equipment

Personal protective equipment, or "PPE," is equipment worn to reduce exposure to risks that might result in significant occupational injuries or illnesses. Chemical, radiological, physical, electrical, mechanical, and other job dangers may cause these injuries and diseases.

PPE used for protection from the following injuries are:

Injury Protecton	Protecton	PPE
Head Injury Protecton	Falling or flying objects, stationary objects, or contact with electrical wires can cause impact, penetration, and electrical injuries. Hard hats can protect one's head from these injuries. A common electrician's hard hat is shown in the figure below. This hard hat is made of nonconductive plastic and comes with a set of safety goggles.	
Foot and Leg Injury Protecton	In addition to foot protection and safety shoes, leggings (e.g., leather) can guard against risks such as falling or rolling objects, sharp objects, wet and slippery surfaces, molten metals, hot surfaces, and electrical hazards.	
Eye and Face Injury Protecton	Spectacles, goggles, special helmets or shields, and spectacles with side shields and face shields can protect against the hazards of flying fragments, large chips, hot sparks, radiation, and splashes from molten metals. They also offer protection from particles, sand, dirt, mists, dust, and glare.	

Protector against Hearing Loss	Hearing protection can be obtained by wearing earplugs or earmuffs. High noise levels can result in permanent hearing loss or damage, as well as physical and mental stress. Self-forming earplugs composed of foam, waxed cotton, or fibreglass wool usually fit well. Workers should be fitted for moulded or prefabricated earplugs by a specialist.	
Hand Injury Protector	Hand protection will aid workers who are exposed to dangerous substances by skin absorption, serious wounds, or thermal burns. Gloves are a frequent protective clothing item. When working on electrified circuits, electricians frequently use leather gloves with rubber inserts. When stripping cable with a sharp blade, Kevlar gloves are used to prevent cuts.	
Whole Body Protector	Workers must protect their entire bodies from risks such as heat and radiation. Rubber, leather, synthetics, and plastic are among the materials used in whole-body PPE, in addition to fire-retardant wool and cotton. Maintenance staff who operate with high-power sources such as transformer installations and motor-control centres are frequently obliged to wear fire-resistant clothes.	

Table 6.1.2. Personal protective equipment

Notes



UNIT 6.2: Fire Safety

Unit Objectives



By the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

1. List the types of fire and fire extinguishers.

6.2.1 Fire Safety

Fire safety is a set of actions aimed at reducing the amount of damage caused by fire. Fire safety procedures include both those that are used to prevent an uncontrolled fire from starting and those that are used to minimise the spread and impact of a fire after it has started. Developing and implementing fire safety measures in the workplace is not only mandated by law but is also essential for the protection of everyone who may be present in the building during a fire emergency.

The basic Fire Safety Responsibilities are:

- To identify risks on the premises, a fire risk assessment must be carried out.
- Ascertain that fire safety measures are properly installed.
- Prepare for unexpected events.
- Fire safety instructions and training should be provided to the employees.

6.2.2 Respond to a Workplace Fire

- Workplace fire drills should be conducted on a regular basis.
- If one has a manual alarm, they should raise it.
- Close the doors and leave the fire-stricken area as soon as possible. Ensure that the evacuation is quick and painless.
- Turn off dangerous machines and don't stop to get personal items.
- Assemble at a central location. Ascertain that the assembly point is easily accessible to the employees.
- If one's clothing catches fire, one shouldn't rush about it. They should stop and descend on the ground and roll to smother the flames if their clothes catch fire.

6.2.3 Fire Extinguisher

Fire extinguishers are portable devices used to put out small flames or minimise their damage until fire-fighters arrive. These are maintained on hand in locations such as fire stations, buildings, workplaces, public transit, and so on. The types and quantity of extinguishers that are legally necessary for a given region are determined by the applicable safety standards.

Types of fire extinguishers are:

There are five main types of fire extinguishers:

1. Water.
2. Powder.
3. Foam.
4. Carbon Dioxide (CO₂).
5. Wet chemical.

1. Water: Water fire extinguishers are one of the most common commercial and residential fire extinguishers on the market. They're meant to be used on class-A flames.



2. Powder: The L2 powder fire extinguisher is the most commonly recommended fire extinguisher in the Class D Specialist Powder category, and is designed to put out burning lithium metal fires.



3. Foam: Foam extinguishers are identified by a cream rectangle with the word "foam" printed on it. They're mostly water-based, but they also contain a foaming component that provides a quick knock-down and blanketing effect on flames. It suffocates the flames and seals the vapours, preventing re-ignition.



4. Carbon Dioxide (CO₂): Class B and electrical fires are extinguished with carbon dioxide extinguishers, which suffocate the flames by removing oxygen from the air. They are particularly beneficial for workplaces and workshops where electrical fires may occur since, unlike conventional extinguishers, they do not leave any toxins behind and hence minimise equipment damage.



5. Wet Chemical: Wet chemical extinguishers are designed to put out fires that are classified as class F. They are successful because they can put out extremely high-temperature fires, such as those caused by cooking oils and fats.



Notes



UNIT 6.3: First Aid

Unit Objectives



By the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

1. Explain how to administer appropriate first aid to victims in case of bleeding, burns, choking, electric shock, poisoning
2. Explain how to administer first aid to victims in case of a heart attack or cardiac arrest due to electric shock.

6.3.1 First Aid

First aid is the treatment or care given to someone who has sustained an injury or disease until more advanced care can be obtained or the person recovers.

The aim of first aid is to:

- Preserve life
- Prevent the worsening of a sickness or injury
- If at all possible, relieve pain
- Encourage recovery
- Keep the unconscious safe.

First aid can help to lessen the severity of an injury or disease, and in some situations, it can even save a person's life.

6.3.2 Need for First Aid at the Workplace

- In the workplace, first aid refers to providing immediate care and life support to persons who have been injured or become unwell at work.
- Many times, first aid can help to lessen the severity of an accident or disease.
- It can also help an injured or sick person relax. In life-or-death situations, prompt and appropriate first aid can make all the difference.

6.3.2 Need for First Aid at the Workplace

In the workplace, first aid refers to providing immediate care and life support to persons who have been injured or become unwell at work.

Many times, first aid can help to lessen the severity of an accident or disease.

It can also help an injured or sick person relax. In life-or-death situations, prompt and appropriate first aid can make all the difference.

6.3.3 Treating Minor Cuts and Scapes

Steps to keep cuts clean and prevent infectionsand scars:

- **Wash Hands:** Wash hands first with soap and water to avoid introducing bacteria into the cut and causing an infection. One should use the hand sanitiser if one is on the go.
- **Stop the bleeding:** Using a gauze pad or a clean towel, apply pressure to the wound. For a few minutes, keep the pressure on.
- **Clean Wounds:** Once the bleeding has stopped, clean the wound by rinsing it under cool running water or using a saline wound wash. Use soap and a moist washcloth to clean the area around the wound. Soap should not be used on the cut since it may irritate the skin. Also, avoid using hydrogen peroxide or iodine, as these may aggravate the wound.
- **Remove Dirt:** Remove any dirt or debris from the area. Pick out any dirt, gravel, glass, or other material in the cut with a pair of tweezers cleaned with alcohol.

6.3.4 Heart Attack

When the blood flow carrying oxygen to the heart is blocked, a heart attack occurs. The heart muscle runs out of oxygen and starts to die.

Symptoms of a heart attack can vary from person to person. They may be mild or severe. Women, older adults, and people with diabetes are more likely to have subtle or unusual symptoms.

Symptoms in adults may include:

- Changes in mental status, especially in older adults.
- Chest pain that feels like pressure, squeezing, or fullness. The pain is most often in the centre of the chest. It may also be felt in the jaw, shoulder, arms, back, and stomach. It can last for more than a few minutes or come and go.
- Cold sweat.
- Light-headedness.
- Nausea (more common in women).
- Indigestion.

- Vomiting.
- Numbness, aching or tingling in the arm (usually the left arm, but the right arm may be affected alone, or along with the left).
- Shortness of breath
- Weakness or fatigue, especially in older adults and in women.

First Aid for Heart Attack

If one thinks someone is experiencing a heart attack, they should:

- Have the person sit down, rest, and try to keep calm.
- Loosen any tight clothing.
- Ask if the person takes any chest pain medicine, such as nitro-glycerine for a known heart condition, and help them take it.
- If the pain does not go away promptly with rest or within 3 minutes of taking nitro-glycerine, call for emergency medical help.
- If the person is unconscious and unresponsive, call 911 or the local emergency number, then begin CPR.
- If an infant or child is unconscious and unresponsive, perform 1 minute of CPR, then call 911 or the local emergency number.

Notes



UNIT 6.4: Waste Management

Unit Objectives



By the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

1. Describe the concept of waste management and methods of disposing of hazardous waste.
2. List the common sources of pollution and ways to minimize them.
3. Elaborate on electronic waste disposal procedures.

6.4.1. Waste Management and Methods of Waste Disposal

The collection, disposal, monitoring, and processing of waste materials is known as waste management. These wastes affect living beings' health and the environment. For reducing their effects, they have to be managed properly. The waste is usually in solid, liquid or gaseous form.

The importance of waste management is:

Waste management is important because it decreases waste's impact on the environment, health, and other factors. It can also assist in the reuse or recycling of resources like paper, cans, and glass. The disposal of solid, liquid, gaseous, or dangerous substances is the example of waste management.

When it comes to trash management, there are numerous factors to consider, including waste disposal, recycling, waste avoidance and reduction, and garbage transportation. Treatment of solid and liquid wastes is part of the waste management process. It also provides a number of recycling options for goods that aren't classified as garbage during the process.

6.4.2 Methods of Waste Management

Non-biodegradable and toxic wastes, such as radioactive remains, can cause irreversible damage to the environment and human health if they are not properly disposed of. Waste disposal has long been a source of worry, with population increase and industrialisation being the primary causes. Here are a few garbage disposal options.

1. **Landfills:** The most common way of trash disposal today is to throw daily waste/garbage into landfills. This garbage disposal method relies on burying the material in the ground.
2. **Recycling:** Recycling is the process of transforming waste items into new products in order to reduce energy consumption and the use of fresh raw materials. Recycling reduces energy consumption, landfill volume, air and water pollution, greenhouse gas emissions, and the preservation of natural resources for future use.

3. **Composting:** Composting is a simple and natural bio-degradation process that converts organic wastes, such as plant remnants, garden garbage, and kitchen waste, into nutrient-rich food for plants.
4. **Incineration:** Incineration is the process of combusting garbage. The waste material is cooked to extremely high temperatures and turned into materials such as heat, gas, steam, and ash using this technology.

6.4.3 Recyclable, Non-Recyclable and Hazardous Waste

1. **Recyclable Waste:** The waste which can be reused or recycled further is known as recyclable waste.
2. **Non-recyclable Waste:** The waste which cannot be reused or recycled is known as non-recyclable waste. Polythene bags are a great example of non-recyclable waste.
3. **Hazardous Waste:** The waste which can create serious harm to the people and the environment is known as hazardous waste.

6.4.4 Sources of Pollution

Pollution is defined as the harm caused by the presence of a material or substances in places where they would not normally be found or at levels greater than normal. Polluting substances might be in the form of a solid, a liquid, or a gas.

- **Point source of pollution:** Pollution from a point source enters a water body at a precise location and can usually be identified. Effluent discharges from sewage treatment plants and industrial sites, power plants, landfill sites, fish farms, and oil leakage via a pipeline from industrial sites are all potential point sources of contamination.
- Point source pollution is often easy to prevent since it is feasible to identify where it originates, and once identified, individuals responsible for the pollution can take rapid corrective action or invest in longer-term treatment and control facilities.
- **Diffuse source of pollution:** As a result of land-use activities such as urban development, amenity, farming, and forestry, diffuse pollution occurs when pollutants are widely used and diffused over a large region. These activities could have occurred recently or in the past. It might be difficult to pinpoint specific sources of pollution and, as a result, take rapid action to prevent it because prevention often necessitates significant changes in land use and management methods.

Pollution Prevention

Pollution prevention entails acting at the source of pollutants to prevent or minimise their production. It saves natural resources, like water, by using materials and energy more efficiently.

Pollution prevention includes any practice that:

- Reduces the amount of any hazardous substance, pollutant, or contaminant entering any waste stream or otherwise released into the environment (including fugitive emissions) prior to recycling, treatment, or disposal;
- Reduces the hazards to public health and the environment associated with the release of such substances, pollutants, or contaminants (these practices are known as "source reduction");
- Improved efficiency in the use of raw materials, energy, water, or other resources, or Conservation is a method of safeguarding natural resources.
- Improvements in housekeeping, maintenance, training, or inventory management; equipment or technology adjustments; process or method modifications; product reformulation or redesign; raw material substitution; or improvements in housekeeping, maintenance, training, or inventory control.

6.4.5 Electronic Waste

Lead, cadmium, beryllium, mercury, and brominated flame retardants are found in every piece of electronic waste. When gadgets and devices are disposed of illegally, these hazardous compounds are more likely to contaminate the earth, pollute the air, and leak into water bodies.

When e-waste is dumped in a landfill, it tends to leach trace metals as water runs through it. The contaminated landfill water then reaches natural groundwater with elevated toxic levels, which can be dangerous if it reaches any drinking water bodies. Despite having an environmentally benign approach, recycling generally results in international shipment and dumping of the gadgets in pits.

Some eco-friendly ways of disposing of e-waste are:

- Giving back the e-waste to the electronic companies and drop-off points
- Following guidelines issued by the government
- Selling or donating the outdated technology-based equipment
- Giving e-waste to a certified e-waste recycler

Exercise

1. Name all five types of fire extinguishers.
2. Explain PPE in brief.
3. List the common workplace hazards.
4. Fill in the blanks:
 - i. A "_____ sign" is a safety sign that prohibits behaviour that is likely to endanger one's health or safety.
 - ii. _____ entails acting at the source of pollutants to prevent or minimise their production.
 - iii. _____ is the treatment or care given to someone who has sustained an injury or disease until more advanced care can be obtained or the person recovers.
 - iv. The threats caused by biological agents like viruses, bacteria, animals, plants, insects and also humans, are known as _____.
 - v. The workplace has to be administered as per the rules of the _____.

Notes







7. Service and Repair of Packaged Type HVAC Ducted Systems - Optional

Unit 7.1 – Packaged Air Conditioners

Unit 7.2 – Installation and Repair of Ductwork



Key Learning Outcomes



At the end of this module, you will be able to:

1. Explain about a packaged air conditioner.
2. List the types of packaged air conditioners.
3. Elaborate about compressor and cooling system of packaged air conditioner.
4. Describe the components of a packaged air conditioner.
5. Distinguish between packaged air conditioned with water cooled condenser and air cooled condenser.
6. Install the ductwork unit.
7. Check the working of installed ductwork.
8. Service and repair the ductwork unit.
9. Elaborate about cooling tower and its types.

UNIT 7.1: Packaged Air Conditioners

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Explain about a packaged air conditioner.
2. List the types of packaged air conditioners.
3. Elaborate about compressor and cooling system of packaged air conditioner.
4. Describe the components of a packaged air conditioner.
5. Distinguish between packaged air conditioned with water cooled condenser and air cooled condenser.

7.1.1 Introduction

An HVAC designer will suggest this type of air conditioner if you want to cool more than two rooms or a larger space at your home or office. A package unit is the all-in-one heating and cooling system for homes that don't have a lot of room indoors for either a furnace and coil, or an air handler. Package units will contain all of their parts in one outdoor unit. It is installed outside the home (either on the roof or the side) where it produces conditioned air that is forced into a series of ducts running throughout the house.

The window and split air conditioners are usually used for the small air conditioning capacities up to 5 tons. The central air conditioning systems are used for where the cooling loads extend beyond 20 tons. The packaged air conditioners are used for the cooling capacities in between these two extremes. The packaged air conditioners are available in the fixed rated capacities like 3, 5, 7, 10 and 15 tons etc. These units are used commonly in places like restaurants, telephone exchanges, homes, small halls, etc.

As the name implies, in the packaged air conditioners all the important components of the air conditioners are enclosed in a single casing like window AC. Thus, the compressor, cooling coil, air handling unit and the air filter are all housed in a single casing and assembled at the factory location.

Depending on the type of the cooling system used in these systems, the packaged air conditioners are divided into two types:

- Packaged air conditioners with water cooled condenser
- Packaged air conditioners with air cooled condenser

7.1.2 Types of Packaged Air Conditioners

Packaged air conditioners with water cooled condenser

In the packaged water conditioners, the condenser is cooled by the water. The condenser is of shell and tube type, with refrigerant flowing along the tube side and the cooling water flowing along the shell side. The water has to be supplied continuously in these systems to maintain functioning of the air conditioning system.

The shell and tube type of condenser is compact in shape and it is enclosed in a single casing along with the compressor, expansion valve, and the air handling unit including the cooling coil or the evaporator. This whole packaged air conditioning unit externally looks like a box with the control panel located externally.

In the packaged units with the water-cooled condenser, the compressor is located at the bottom along with the condenser. Above these components the evaporator or the cooling coil is located. The air handling unit comprising of the centrifugal blower and the air filter is located above the cooling coil. The centrifugal blower has the capacity to handle large volume of air required for cooling a number of rooms. From the top of the package air conditioners the duct comes out that extends to the various rooms that are to be cooled.

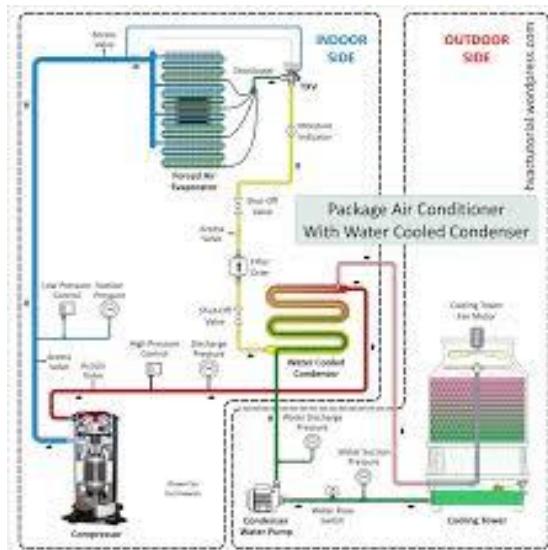


Fig 7.1.1: Packaged air conditioner with water cooled condenser

Packaged Air Conditioners with Water Cooled Condenser

In this packaged air conditioners, the condenser of the refrigeration system is cooled by the atmospheric air. There is an outdoor unit that comprises of the important components like the compressor, condenser and in some cases the expansion valve. The outdoor unit can be kept on the terrace or any other open place where the free flow of the atmospheric air is available. The fan located inside this unit sucks the outside air and blows it over the condenser coil cooling it in the process. The condenser coil is made up of several turns of the copper tubing and it is finned externally. The packaged ACs with the air-cooled condensers are used more commonly than the ones with water cooled condensers since air is freely available it is difficult maintain continuous flow of the water.

The cooling unit comprising of the expansion valve, evaporator, the air handling blower and the filter are located on the floor or hanged to the ceiling. The ducts coming from the cooling unit are connected to the various rooms that are to be cooled.



Fig. 7.1.2: Packaged air conditioners with air cooled condenser

7.1.3 Packaged Air Conditioner: Capacity Control System

Compressors and Control System in the Packaged Air Conditioners

The packaged air conditioners are used for the low to medium tonnage of air conditioning load ranging from 5 to 20 tons also higher. For smaller loads up to 5 tons single compressor is used. For the higher load of more than 5 tons two compressor are used in the package air conditioning system forming two independent refrigeration systems. Though the two systems are independent they are housed in the same supporting framework. The evaporator systems of these two systems are entwined together.

With the two compressors installed in the system there is facility for the capacity control of the air conditioning plant thus one can run the plant fully or partially as per the heating load or as per the number of rooms to be cooled. At full capacity both the compressors can be kept running, while at the partial load one of the compressors can be kept off. The capacity control can also be done automatically by thermostat. The two compressors also ensure that the air conditioning plant won't stop completely when one of the compressors break down, for the system can still keep on running though on partial capacity.

The water-cooled condenser used with the two-compressor system can be single shell but partitioned inside it for different passages for the refrigerant from the two compressors. There can also be two different water-cooled condensers for two different systems. If the condenser is of air cooled type, there would be two condensers either placed side-by-side or entwined together just like the evaporator of the system.

Thermostat Setting for Two Compressor Systems

For controlling the operation of the two-compressor packaged air conditioning system, two different thermostats can be connected to the two cooling systems. This will allow for the capacity control of both the compressors to ensure optimum running of the plant.

In many cases the thermostat is connected to the compressor of one cooling system only. In this case one compressor keeps on running at full capacity and the other compressor remains shut or runs at partial or full capacity depending on the cooling load. To ensure that one compressor won't wear and tear at the fast rate, the compressor running at the full capacity is interchanged from time-to-time.

The two-compressor system is used for the cooling loads between 5 to tons 15 tons, for higher loads more than two units can be installed as per the requirements. There can be multiple air handling units in these systems sending the chilled air to different parts of the building. The compressor and the condenser units are housed in the same location of the building thus there is one common place for the return air. If these units have water cooled condenser, the hot water coming out from them is cooled in the single cooling tower.

During the full load all the compressors run at the full capacity, and when the load reduces one or more compressors are stopped automatically, which makes the other compressors to run at the full load. When the compressor runs at full capacity it runs more efficiently. Whether the packaged air conditioner consists of single compressor or the multiple compressors, most of the components are assembled at the factory site, so the installation of the package AC is quite easy.

7.1.4 Ductwork in Package AC

Ductwork installation is one of the important aspects people overlook. For instance, room additions have a great impact on the ductwork, including the general cooling and heating of your home or commercial building. Even 200 square feet of addition may require significant changes to your ductwork system. Therefore, it's important to understand what ductwork is, the role it plays and its key components.



Fig. 7.1.3: Ductwork in package AC unit

The Basic Function of the Duct System

A ductwork system is designed to distribute airflow from your HVAC equipment to your entire home or commercial building. This encompasses the air that is sucked from the whole building into the air conditioner /heater where it gets cooled or heated and then pushed back via the ducts into your living space.

The intake and output of the air are determined by how efficient a duct system is. If you do not have properly designed return vents, the equilibrium of the cooling and heating system and air pressure will be off. This makes your climate control and home's efficiency suffer invariably.

You should know that pipes used to transfer gas, water or refrigerant are not ductwork. Only air is moved via ductwork. What's more, there are many ductwork constructions and shapes you can choose from. It may come in oval, round or rectangular shapes. It might be fashioned from a wide range of materials like flexible plastics, fiberglass or different metals.



Fig 7.1.4: Exposure of air diffuser

Another problem home owner who install replacement windows or upgrade their insulation face is enhanced ventilation. Usually, this is a minor fix, but it needs to be evaluated and handled by a heating, ventilation and air conditioning expert. Small changes in ductwork or other aspects of your system can help give you the most comfortable and energy-efficient experience possible.

Proper Installation of duct

Properly-installed ductwork helps to keep the home comfortable because it effectively regulates the temperature in the entire home. However, poor installation creates numerous problems. Seams between duct pieces are sealed using an aluminium tape while ductwork is separated from areas like crawl spaces and attics with insulation. If any of these issues is not appropriately handled, air leakage occurs. This makes the system inefficient, and the quality of air will be poor. It could also lead to the failure of the entire air conditioning or heating equipment, which is even more costly.

Did you notice that we said ductwork is sealed with aluminium tape? Despite the misleading name, duct tape isn't suitable for sealing ducts. Instead, special aluminium tape or sometimes mastic is used to create the proper seal on ductwork to provide long-lasting protection and efficiency.

Another aspect that needs to be considered when installing ductwork is the sizing. The ductwork's size should match the size of the air conditioner and/or heater so as to ensure the operation is very efficient. Ductwork installation experts should be capable of matching the equipment you are using to the duct system for a solid fit.

The pros can also fine-tune the ductwork for comfort, longevity and optimal efficiency. This is known as balancing; a process where the dampers located in the ducts are adjusted to make sure that the required amount of air flows into each room.

Ductwork Should Be Kept Clean

The quality of air in your home or commercial building is essential. Keeping dust, pet dander or other types of irritants from the air you breathe in encompasses more than simply changing your equipment's air filter.

Did you know that contaminants can also collect in your duct system and regular cleaning is required? Cleaning the air ducts is a vital part of ensuring that your family is healthy and the residence is clean. So why should you clean your ducts? Listed below are some reasons.

- **Clogging of the ducts** – dust and other particles can clog your ducts, causing your HVAC equipment to work less effectively. This can also cause health issues.
- **You may be losing efficiency** – if you have clogged air ducts, your unit will be forced to work harder to sustain the required temperatures in your residence. This results in an inefficient unit and high utility bills.

7.1.5 Materials used in Ductwork

Ducts are fabricated from different materials, namely:

- **Galvanized steel** – this is a standard and most popular material used to fabricate ductwork. The zinc coating found in the metal hinders rust and helps you avoid painting costs. The metal ducts are lined using faced fiberglass blankets (also known as duct liner) or externally wrapped with duct wrap. If need be, a double-walled duct can be used.
- **Aluminium** – this ductwork is light and very easy to install. You can easily get custom-made or special shapes fabricated on site or in the shop, depending on your needs. Aluminium ducts are less common compared to galvanized steel.
- **Polyurethane and phenolic panels** – these foam panels are crafted with factory-applied aluminium finishes on both sides. The aluminium foil's thickness varies depending on whether it's meant to be used indoors or externally.
- **Flexible ducting** – these ducts are made with flexible plastic over a metallic wire coil in order to shape a tube. The flex ducts came in a wide range of configurations, and are convenient for attaching the outlets that supply air to the rigid ductwork.

Parts of the System

A duct system has other components other than the ducts, which help the system to operate as required to offer quality air in your entire home or commercial building. Listed below are some key components you should know and their functions:

Vibration isolators

Vibration isolators are flexible sections usually inserted in the duct after or before the air handler to minimize the vibration that occurs when a duct system is operating. Duct systems

start at the air handler, which contains blowers. Blowers create substantial vibration, making the duct system transmit the vibration and noise throughout the building. This is avoided by using vibration isolators made with a rubberized material.



Fig. 7.1.5: Exposure of ductwork

Volume Control Dampers

Your duct system needs to have a way to adjust the airflow volume to different sections of the ducting unit. Volume control dampers help with this function and can be automatic or manual. Automatic control in a simple system is provided by zone dampers while the VAR (variable air volume) helps control the complex systems.

Smoke and Fire Dampers

These components are found in the duct system if a duct is passing through a fire curtain or firewall. They are designed to seal off a duct immediately if they detect fire or smoke. They then stay sealed until a technician manually reopens them.

Turning Vanes

Turning vanes are designed to be installed in the ductwork to reduce resistance and turbulence to the flow of air. The air is guided by the vanes, helping it change the direction easily.

Plenums

These are the central collection and distribution units in an HVAC system. The return plenums carry air from numerous return vents into the centralized air handler. The supply plenum, on the other hand, directs air from the system's central unit into the rooms that need cooling or heating.

Terminal Units

Terminal units are often found in the branch ducts in a multi-zone HVAC system. Normally, each thermal zone has one terminal unit. Some of them are fan-powered mixing boxes, induction terminal units and VAV boxes. Sometimes they contain a cooling or heating coil.

Air Terminals

These are the outlets that supply air or are exhaust or return air inlets. When it comes to supplying air, diffusers are commonly found in smaller HVAC systems used in residences. Exhaust grilles are used for appearance reasons, although some also have an air filter.

Conclusion

To get quality air in your home or commercial building, it's important to have an efficient duct system. Proper installation is key and should always be done by a professional who can evaluate your needs and ensure you get a system that's efficient and effective.

You should make sure your duct system is cleaned by specialists to ensure that you and your family breathe quality air. You can always choose the material you prefer for your ductwork, but a professional should be in a better position to advise you accordingly.

UNIT 7.2: Installation and Repair of Ductwork

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Install the ductwork unit.
2. Check the working of installed ductwork.
3. Service and repair the ductwork unit.
4. Elaborate about cooling tower and its types.

7.2.1 Installation of Ductwork

Step 1 — Check Equipment

IDENTIFY UNIT—The unit model number and serial number are stamped on the unit identification plate. Check this information against shipping papers.

INSPECT SHIPMENT—Inspect for shipping damage while unit is still on shipping pallet. If unit appears to be damaged or is torn loose from its securing points, have it examined by transportation inspectors before removal. Forward claim papers directly to transportation company. Manufacturer is not responsible for any damage incurred in transit. Check all items against shipping list.

Step 2 — Provide Unit Support

SLAB MOUNT — Place the unit on a rigid, level surface, suitable to support the unit weight. The flat surface should extend approximately 2-in. beyond the unit casing on the 2 sides. The duct connection side and condensate drain connection sides should be flush with the edge of the flat surface. A concrete pad or a suitable fiberglass mounting pad is recommended. The unit should be level to within 1/4 inch. This is necessary for the unit drain to function properly.

Step 3—Provide Clearances— The required minimum service clearances and clearances to adequate ventilation and condenser air must be provided. The condenser fan pulls air through the condenser coil and discharges it through the fan on the top cover. Be sure that the fan discharge does not recirculate to the condenser coil. Do not locate the unit in either a corner or under an overhead obstruction. Do not restrict condenser airflow. An air restriction at either the outdoor-air inlet or the fan discharge can be harmful to compressor life.

Step 4 — Place Unit — Unit can be moved with the handholds. Use extreme caution to prevent damage when moving the unit. Unit must remain in an upright position during all moving operations. The unit must be level for proper condensate drainage; the ground-level pad must be level before setting the unit in place. When a field fabricated support is used, be sure that the support is level and that it properly supports the unit.

Step 5—Select and Install Ductwork— The design and installation of the duct system must be in accordance with the standards of air conditioning and ventilating systems. Select and size ductwork, supply-air registers and return-air grilles according to ASHRAE (American Society of Heating, Refrigeration, and Air Conditioning Engineers) recommendations. Use the duct flanges provided on the supply- and return air openings on the side of the unit.

7.2.2 Initial Start up

PRE-START-UP

TO CHECK

Failure to observe the following warnings could result in serious personal injury:

1. Follow recognized safety practices and wear protective goggles when checking or servicing refrigerant system.
2. Do not operate compressor or provide any electric power to unit unless compressor terminal cover is in place and secured.
3. Do not remove compressor terminal cover until all electrical sources are disconnected.
4. Relieve all pressure from both high- and low-pressure sides of the system before touching or disturbing anything inside terminal box if refrigerant leak is suspected around compressor terminals. Use accepted methods to recover refrigerant.
5. Never attempt to repair soldered connection while refrigerant system is under pressure.
6. Do not use torch to remove any component. System contains oil and refrigerant under pressure. To remove a component, wear protective goggles and proceed as follows:
 - a. Shut off electrical power to unit.
 - b. Relieve all pressure from system using both high and low-pressure ports. Use accepted methods to recover refrigerant.
 - c. Cut component connecting tubing with tubing cutter and remove component from unit.
 - d. Carefully dismantle remaining tubing stubs when necessary. Oil can ignite when exposed to torch flame.

Prepare the unit for initial start-up:

1. Remove all access panels.
2. Read and follow instructions on all WARNING, CAUTION, and INFORMATION labels attached to, or shipped with, unit. Make the following inspections:
 - a. Inspect for shipping and handling damages such as broken lines, loose parts, disconnected wires, etc.
 - b. Inspect for oil at all refrigerant tubing connections and on unit base. Detecting oil generally indicates a refrigerant leak. Leak-test all refrigerant tubing connections using electronic leak detector, or liquid-soap solution.
 - c. Inspect all field- and factory-wiring connections. Be sure that connections are completed and tight.
 - d. Inspect coil fins. If damaged during shipping and handling, carefully straighten fins with a fin comb.
3. Verify the following conditions:
 - a. Make sure that outdoor-fan blade is correctly positioned in fan orifice.
 - b. Make sure that air filter is in place.
 - c. Make sure that condensate drain pan and trap are filled with water to ensure proper drainage.
 - d. Make sure that all tools and miscellaneous loose parts have been removed.

START-UP

Use the Start-Up Checklist supplied product Supplier Company.

Check for Refrigerant Leaks — Locate and repair refrigerant leaks and charge the unit if necessary. Evacuate refrigerant system and reclaim refrigerant if no additional leaks are found.

Start-Up Cooling Section and Make Adjustments

Checking Cooling Control Operation—Start and check the unit for proper cooling control operation as follows:

1. Place room thermostat SYSTEM switch in OFF position. Observe that blower motor starts when FAN switch is placed in ON position and shuts down when FAN switch is placed in AUTO. Position (Functioning tab may depend on company).
2. Place SYSTEM switch in COOL position and FAN switch in AUTO. position. Set cooling control below room temperature. Observe that compressor, condenser fan, and evaporator blower motors start. Observe that cooling cycle shuts down when control setting is satisfied. Functioning tab may depend on company.
3. When using an automatic changeover room thermostat, place both SYSTEM and FAN switches in AUTO. positions. Observe that unit operates in Cooling mode when temperature control is set to “call for cooling” (below room temperature).

Indoor Airflow and Airflow Adjustments

FAN OPERATION — The FAN switch on the thermostat controls indoor fan operation. When the FAN switch is placed in the ON position, the IFR (indoor-fan relay) is energized. The normally-open contacts close, which then provide power to the indoor (evaporator) fan motor (IFM). The IFM will run continuously when the FAN switch is set to ON. When the FAN switch is set to AUTO, the thermostat deenergizes the IFR (provided there is not a call for cooling). The contacts open and the IFM is deenergized. The IFM will be energized only when there is a call for cooling.

COOLING — On a call for cooling, the compressor contactor and the IFR are energized through the terminals of the thermostat. On units with a compressor time delay relay, there is a 5-minute (\pm 45 sec) delay between compressor starts. Energizing the compressor contactor supplies power to the compressor and the outdoor (condenser) fan motor (OFM). Energizing the IFR provides power to the IFM. When the need for cooling has been satisfied, the OFM, compressor, and IFM (FAN on AUTO) are deenergized. If the unit is equipped with a 30-second delay, the indoor fan will remain energized for 30 seconds after the compressor is deenergized.

HEATING — If accessory electric heaters are installed, on a call for heat the thermostat energized the relay which energizes the electric heaters. The IFR is energized which starts the indoor-fan motor. If the heaters are staged. When, the need for heating is satisfied, the heater and IFM are deenergized.

7.2.3 Servicing and Repairing

To ensure continuing high performance, and to reduce the possibility of premature equipment failure, periodic Servicing must be performed on this equipment. This cooling unit should be inspected at least once each year by a qualified service person.

The minimum Servicing requirements for this equipment are as follows:

1. Inspect air filter(s) each month. Clean or replace when necessary.
2. Inspect indoor coil, outdoor coil, drain pan, and condensate drain each cooling season for cleanliness. Clean when necessary.
3. Inspect blower motor and wheel for cleanliness each cooling season. Clean when necessary. For first heating season, inspect blower wheel bimonthly to determine proper cleaning frequency.
4. Check electrical connections for tightness and controls for proper operation each cooling season. Service when necessary.
5. Check the drain channel in the top cover periodically for blockage (leaves, insects). Clean as needed.

Air Filter

Inspect air filter(s) at least once each month and replace (throwaway-type) or clean (cleanable-type) at least twice during each cooling season or whenever the filters become clogged with dust and lint. Replace filters with the same dimensional size and type as originally provided, when necessary.

Unit Top Removal (Condenser-Coil Side)

When performing service procedures that require removal of the unit top, be sure to perform all of the routine service procedures that require top removal, including coil inspection and cleaning, and condensate drain pan inspection and cleaning.

Only qualified service personnel should perform service and service procedures that require unit top removal.

Evaporator Blower and Motor — For longer life, operating economy, and continuing efficiency, clean accumulated dirt and grease from the blower wheel and motor annually.

To clean the blower wheel:

1. Access the blower assembly as follows:
 - a. Remove top access panel.
 - b. Remove screws that hold blower orifice ring to blower housing. Save screws.
 - c. Loosen setscrew(s) which secure wheel to motor shaft.
2. Remove and clean blower wheel as follows:
 - a. Lift wheel from housing. When handling and/or cleaning blower wheel, be sure not to disturb balance weights (clips) on blower wheel vanes.
 - b. Remove caked-on dirt from wheel and housing with a brush. Remove dirt accumulations from wheel and housing with vacuum cleaner, using a soft brush attachment. Remove grease and oil with a mild solvent.
 - c. Reassemble blower into housing. Place upper orifice ring on blower to judge location of the blower wheel. Be sure setscrews are tightened on motor and are not on round part of shaft.
 - d. Replace top access panel.

Condensate Drain Pan — Inspect the condenser coil, evaporator coil, and condensate drain pan at least once each year. Proper inspection and cleaning require the removal of the unit top. The coils are easily cleaned when dry; therefore, inspect and clean the coils either before

or after each cooling season. Remove all obstructions (including weeds and shrubs) that interfere with the airflow through the condenser coil. Straighten bent fins with a fin comb. If coated with dirt or lint, clean the coils with a vacuum cleaner, using a soft brush. Clean the drain pan and condensate drain by removing all foreign matter from the pan. Flush the pan and drain tube with clear water. Do not splash water on the insulation, motor, wiring, or air filter(s).

Condenser Fan

1. Shut off unit power supply.
2. Remove condenser-fan assembly (grille, motor, motor cover, and fan) by removing screws and flipping assembly onto unit top cover.
3. Loosen fan hub setscrews.
4. Adjust fan height.
5. Tighten setscrews.
6. Replace condenser-fan assembly.

Electrical Controls and Wiring— Inspect and check the electrical controls and wiring annually. Be sure to turn off the electrical power to the unit. Remove the top panel to locate all the electrical controls and wiring. Check all electrical connections for tightness. Tighten all screw connections. If any smoky or burned connections are noticed, disassemble the connection, clean all the parts, restrip the wire end and reassemble the connection properly and securely. After inspecting the electrical controls and wiring, replace all the panels.

Refrigerant Circuit— Inspect all refrigerant tubing connections and the unit base for oil accumulations annually. Detecting oil generally indicates a refrigerant leak. If oil is detected or if low cooling performance is suspected, leak-test all refrigerant tubing using an electronic leak detector, or liquid-soap solution.

Evaporator Airflow — The cooling airflow does not require checking unless improper performance is suspected. If a problem exists, be sure that all supply- and return-air grilles are open and free from obstructions, and that the air filter is clean.

Metering Devices— Refrigerant metering devices are fixed orifices and are located in the inlet header to the evaporator coil.

Repairing

Symptom	Cause	Solution
Compressor and condenser fan will not start.	Power failure	Call power company.
	Fuse blown or circuit breaker tripped	Replace fuse or reset circuit breaker.
	Defective thermostat, contactor, transformer, or control relay	Replace component.
	Insufficient line voltage	Determine cause and correct.

	Incorrect or faulty wiring	Check wiring diagram and rewire correctly.
	Thermostat setting too high	Lower thermostat setting below room temperature.
Compressor will not start but condenser fan runs.	Faulty wiring or loose connections in compressor circuit	Check wiring and repair or replace.
	Compressor motor burned out, seized, or internal overload open	Determine cause. Replace compressor.
	Defective run/start capacitor, overload, or start relay	Determine cause and replace.
	One leg of 3-phase power dead	Replace fuse or reset circuit breaker. Determine cause.
Compressor cycles (other than normally satisfying thermostat).	Refrigerant overcharge or undercharge	Recover refrigerant, evacuate system, and recharge to capacities shown on nameplate.
	Defective compressor	Replace and determine cause.
	Insufficient line voltage	Determine cause and correct.
	Blocked condenser	Determine cause and correct.
	Defective run/start capacitor, overload or start relay	Determine cause and replace.
	Defective thermostat	Replace thermostat.
	Faulty condenser-fan motor or capacitor	Replace.
	Restriction in refrigerant system	Locate restriction and remove.
Compressor operates continuously.	Dirty air filter	Replace filter.
	Unit undersized for load	Decrease load or increase unit size.
	Thermostat set too low	Reset thermostat.
	Low refrigerant charge	Locate leak, repair and recharge.
	Leaking valves in compressor	Replace compressor.
	Condenser coil dirty or restricted	Clean coil or remove restriction.
Excessive head pressure.	Dirty air filter	Replace filter.
	Dirty condenser coil	Clean coil.
	Refrigerant overcharged	Recover/Remove excess refrigerant.
	Air in system	Recover refrigerant, evacuate system, and recharge.

	Condenser air restricted or air short-cycling	Determine cause and correct.
Head pressure too low.	Low refrigerant charge	Check for leaks, repair, and recharge.
	Compressor valves leaking	Replace compressor.
	Restriction in liquid tube	Remove restriction.
Excessive suction pressure.	High heat load	Check for source and eliminate.
	Compressor valves leaking	Replace compressor.
	Refrigerant overcharged	Recover/Remove excess refrigerant.
Suction pressure too low.	Dirty air filter	Replace filter.
	Low refrigerant charge	Check for leaks, repair, and recharge.
Suction pressure too low.	Metering device or low side restricted	Remove source of restriction.
	Insufficient evaporator airflow	Increase air quantity. Check filter — replace if necessary. Check for other evaporator coil obstructions.
	Temperature too low in conditioned area	Reset thermostat.
	Field-installed filter-drier restricted	Replace.

Table 7.2.1: Causes and solution of different symptoms in ductwork

7.2.4 Cooling Tower

Introduction

A cooling tower is a **specialized heat exchanger** in which air and water are brought into direct contact with each other in order to **reduce the water's temperature**. As this occurs, a small volume of water is evaporated, reducing the temperature of the water being circulated through the tower.

Water, which has been heated by an air-conditioning condenser, is pumped to the cooling tower through pipes. The water sprays through nozzles onto banks of material called "fill," which slows the flow of water through the cooling tower, and exposes as much water surface area as possible for maximum air-water contact. As the water flows through the cooling tower, it is exposed to air, which is being pulled through the tower by the electric motor-driven fan.

When the water and air meet, a small amount of water is evaporated, creating a cooling action. The cooled water is then pumped back to the condenser or process equipment where it absorbs heat. It will then be pumped back to the cooling tower to be cooled once again. Cooling Tower Fundamentals provides a level of basic cooling tower knowledge and is a great resource for those wanting to learn more.

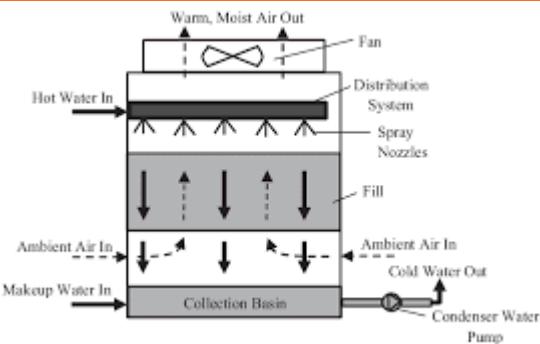


Fig. 7.2.1: Cooling Tower

Types of Cooling Towers

1. Crossflow Cooling Towers

In crossflow towers the water flows vertically through the fill while the air flows horizontally, across the flow of the falling water.

Because of this, air does not have to pass through the distribution system, permitting the use of gravity flow hot water distribution basins mounted at the top of the unit above the fill. These basins are universally applied on all crossflow towers.

2. Counterflow Cooling Towers

Counterflow towers are designed so that air flows vertically upward, counter to the flow of falling water in the fill. Because of this vertical airflow, it is not possible to use the open, gravity-flow basins typical in crossflow designs. Instead, counterflow towers use pressurized, pipe-type spray systems to spray water onto the top of the fill.

Since air must be able to pass through the spray system, the pipes and nozzles must be farther apart so as not to restrict airflow.

Induced Draft vs. Forced Draft Cooling Towers

Induced draft cooling towers have fans that are typically mounted on top of the unit and pull air through the fill media. Conversely, air is pushed by blowers located at the base of the air inlet face on forced draft towers.

Factory Assembled (FAP) vs. Field Erected (FEP) Cooling Towers

Factory-assembled towers (FAP) are built and shipped in as few sections as the mode of transportation will permit. A relatively small tower will ship essentially intact. A larger, multi-cell cooling tower is manufactured as modules at the factory, and shipped ready for final assembly. Factory-assembled towers are also known as "packaged" or "FAP" (factory-assembled product). Factory-assembled cooling towers can be crossflow or counterflow, induced draft or forced draft, depending on the application. Induced draft tower is widely used for HVAC and light industrial applications.

Field-erected cooling towers (FEP) Field-erected towers are primarily constructed at the site of ultimate use. All large cooling towers, and many of the smaller towers, are prefabricated, piece-marked, and shipped to the site for final assembly. The manufacturer usually provides labour and supervision for final assembly. Field-erected towers can be crossflow or counterflow, depending on the application.

Performance Drivers

Using a total system approach, every cooling tower and component is designed and engineered to work together as an integrated system for efficient performance and long life.

Variable Flow – There may be significant energy savings opportunities if the cooling tower can be operated under variable flow in off-peak conditions. Variable flow is a way to maximize the effectiveness of the installed tower capacity for whatever flow the process has.

Fill – One of the single most important components of a cooling tower is the fill. Its ability to promote both the maximum contact surface and the maximum contact time between air and water determines the efficiency of the cooling tower. The two basic fill classifications are splash type fill (breaks up the water) and film type fill (spreads the water into a thin layer).

Drift eliminators – Designed to remove water droplets from the discharged air and reduce loss of process water, drift eliminators cause the air and droplets to make sudden changes in direction. This causes the drops of water to be separated from the air and deposited back into the tower.

Nozzles – Crossflow configuration permits the use of a gravity-flow distribution system with a nozzle. With this system, the supply water is elevated to hot water distribution basins above the fill and then flows over the fill (by gravity) through nozzles located in the distribution basin floor. Counterflow configuration necessitates the use of a pressure type system of closed pipe and spray nozzles.

Fans – Cooling tower fans must move large volumes of air efficiently, and with minimum vibration. The materials of manufacture must not only be compatible with their design, but must also be capable of withstanding the corrosive effects of the environment in which the fans are required to operate.

Driveshafts – The driveshaft transmits power from the output shaft of the motor to the input shaft of motor. Because the driveshaft operates within the tower, it must be highly corrosion resistant. Turning at full motor speed, it must be well balanced and capable of being rebalanced.

Air Conditioner Pumps

Air conditioner pumps that are commonly used in HVAC industry are the centrifugal pumps. It basically consists of a pump impeller which is connected to the shaft of a motor. The centrifugal force created when the motor turns causes the liquid to be drawn towards it and discharged to the opening of the volute.

The pump creates a differential pressure between the water inlet and outlet of the pump. This pressure differential enables the water to flow through the pipes.

The motor used can be single speed, dual speed or variable speed. The more complicated variable speed motor which can vary its speed and connected to the building management system is increasingly being used due to its better efficiency and control. By varying the speed of the pump motor, the impeller speed can be optimized to the load of the system.

The moving parts of the pumps are usually made of non-ferrous material to prevent corrosion. The body is made from cast-iron for stability and durability.

These pumps are used in:

- **Condenser water system** where the hot water from the condenser is pumped to the cooling tower which is located a distance away from the condenser. The hot water is then cooled at the cooling tower before being circulated back to the condenser. This process is done repeatedly.
- **Chilled water system** where the chilled water from the chillers are being pumped and circulated to the various sections of a building before being used to cool the space.
- **Hot water system** where the hot water from the boiler is circulated to the heat transfer units and back.

In-Line Pumps and the Closed Coupled Pump

There are two main design of the air conditioner pumps. They are the In-Line Pumps and the Closed Coupled Pump.

- The **in-line type** is smaller which is used for a lower head application. It is also known as booster pumps. The suction and discharge are connected in a straight line making it light in weight and hence can be supported directly by the piping. It is also less costly and simpler to install.
- The **closed coupled pump** has its impeller mounted on and supported by the motor shaft. It has mounting flange with base that supports the motor and pump. There is also an end suction connection. It is available from small to medium capacities and is not too costly.



8. Employability & Entrepreneurship Skills

Unit 8.1 – Personal Strengths & Value Systems

Unit 8.2 – Digital Literacy: A Recap

Unit 8.3 – Money Matters

Unit 8.4 – Preparing for Employment & Self-Employment

Unit 8.5 – Understanding Entrepreneurship

Unit 8.6 – Preparing to be an Entrepreneur



Key Learning Outcomes



At the end of this module, you will be able to:

1. Explain the meaning of health
2. List common health issues
3. Discuss tips to prevent common health issues
4. Explain the meaning of hygiene
5. Discuss the purpose of Swacch Bharat Abhiyan
6. Explain the meaning of habit
7. Discuss ways to set up a safe work environment
8. Discuss critical safety habits to be followed by employees
9. Explain the importance of self-analysis
10. Discuss motivation with the help of Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs
11. Discuss the meaning of achievement motivation
12. List the characteristics of entrepreneurs with achievement motivation
13. List the different factors that motivate you
14. Discuss the role of attitude in self-analysis
15. Discuss how to maintain a positive attitude
16. List your strengths and weaknesses
17. Discuss the qualities of honest people
18. Describe the importance of honesty in entrepreneurs
19. Discuss the elements of a strong work ethic
20. Discuss how to foster a good work ethic
21. List the characteristics of highly creative people
22. List the characteristics of highly innovative people
23. Discuss the benefits of time management
24. List the traits of effective time managers
25. Describe effective time management technique
26. Discuss the importance of anger management
27. Describe anger management strategies
28. Discuss tips for anger management
29. Discuss the causes of stress
30. Discuss the symptoms of stress
31. Discuss tips for stress management
32. Identify the basic parts of a computer
33. Identify the basic parts of a keyboard
34. Define basic computer terminology
35. Recall the functions of basic computer keys
36. Discuss the main applications of MS Office
37. Discuss the benefits of Microsoft Outlook
38. Discuss the different types of e-commerce
39. List the benefits of e-commerce for retailers and customers
40. Discuss how the Digital India campaign will help boost e-commerce in India
41. Describe how you will sell a product or service on an e-commerce platform
42. Discuss the importance of saving money

43. Discuss the benefits of saving money
44. Discuss the main types of bank accounts
45. Describe the process of opening a bank account
46. Differentiate between fixed and variable costs
47. Describe the main types of investment options
48. Describe the different types of insurance products
49. Describe the different types of taxes
50. Discuss the uses of online banking
51. Discuss the main types of electronic funds transfers
52. Discuss the steps to prepare for an interview
53. Discuss the steps to create an effective Resume
54. Discuss the most frequently asked interview questions
55. Discuss how to answer the most frequently asked interview questions
56. Discuss basic workplace terminology
57. Discuss the concept of entrepreneurship
58. Discuss the importance of entrepreneurship
59. Describe the characteristics of an entrepreneur
60. Describe the different types of enterprises
61. List the qualities of an effective leader
62. Discuss the benefits of effective leadership
63. List the traits of an effective team
64. Discuss the importance of listening effectively
65. Discuss how to listen effectively
66. Discuss the importance of speaking effectively
67. Discuss how to speak effectively
68. Discuss how to solve problems
69. List important problem solving traits
70. Discuss ways to assess problem solving skills
71. Discuss the importance of negotiation
72. Discuss how to negotiate
73. Discuss how to identify new business opportunities
74. Discuss how to identify business opportunities within your business
75. Explain the meaning of entrepreneur
76. Describe the different types of entrepreneurs
77. List the characteristics of entrepreneurs
78. Discuss entrepreneur success stories
79. Discuss the entrepreneurial process
80. Describe the entrepreneurship ecosystem
81. Discuss the purpose of the Make in India campaign
82. Discuss key schemes to promote entrepreneurs
83. Discuss the relationship between entrepreneurship and risk appetite
84. Discuss the relationship between entrepreneurship and resilience
85. Describe the characteristics of a resilient entrepreneur
86. Discuss how to deal with failure

87. Discuss how market research is carried out
88. Describe the 4 Ps of marketing
89. Discuss the importance of idea generation
90. Define basic business terminology
91. Discuss the need for CRM
92. Discuss the benefits of CRM
93. Discuss the need for networking
94. Discuss the benefits of networking
95. Discuss the importance of setting goals
96. Differentiate between short-term, medium-term and long-term goals
97. Discuss how to write a business plan
98. Explain the financial planning process
99. Discuss ways to manage your risk
100. Describe the procedure and formalities for applying for bank finance
101. Discuss how to manage your own enterprise
102. List important questions that every entrepreneur should ask before starting an enterprise

UNIT 8.1: Personal Strengths & Value Systems

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, participant will be able to:

1. Explain the meaning of health
2. List common health issues
3. Discuss tips to prevent common health issues
4. Explain the meaning of hygiene
5. Discuss the purpose of Swacch Bharat Abhiyan
6. Explain the meaning of habit
7. Discuss ways to set up a safe work environment
8. Discuss critical safety habits to be followed by employees
9. Explain the importance of self-analysis
10. Discuss motivation with the help of Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs
11. Discuss the meaning of achievement motivation
12. List the characteristics of entrepreneurs with achievement motivation
13. List the different factors that motivate you
14. Discuss the role of attitude in self-analysis
15. Discuss how to maintain a positive attitude
16. List your strengths and weaknesses
17. Discuss the qualities of honest people
18. Describe the importance of honesty in entrepreneurs
19. Discuss the elements of a strong work ethic
20. Discuss how to foster a good work ethic
21. List the characteristics of highly creative people
22. List the characteristics of highly innovative people
23. Discuss the benefits of time management
24. List the traits of effective time managers
25. Describe effective time management technique
26. Discuss the importance of anger management
27. Describe anger management strategies
28. Discuss tips for anger management
29. Discuss the causes of stress
30. Discuss the symptoms of stress
31. Discuss tips for stress management

8.1.1 Health, Habits, Hygiene: What is Health?

As per the World Health Organization (WHO), health is a “State of complete physical, mental, and social well-being, and not merely the absence of disease or infirmity.” This means being healthy does not simply mean not being unhealthy – it also means you need to be at peace emotionally, and feel fit physically. For example, you cannot say you are healthy simply because you do not have any physical ailments like a cold or cough. You also need to think about whether you are feeling calm, relaxed and happy.

Common Health Issues

Some common health issues are:

- Allergies
- Asthma
- Skin Disorders
- Depression and Anxiety
- Diabetes
- Cough, Cold, Sore Throat
- Difficulty Sleeping
- Obesity

8.1.1.1 Tips to Prevent Health Issues



Taking measures to prevent ill health is always better than curing a disease or sickness. You can stay healthy by:

- Eating healthy foods like fruits, vegetables and nuts
- Cutting back on unhealthy and sugary foods
- Drinking enough water everyday
- Not smoking or drinking alcohol
- Exercising for at least 30 minutes a day, 4-5 times a week
- Taking vaccinations when required
- Practicing yoga exercises and meditation

How many of these health standards do you follow? Tick the ones that apply to you.

1. Get minimum 7-8 hours of sleep every night.
2. Avoid checking email first thing in the morning and right before you go to bed at night.
3. Don't skip meals – eat regular meals at correct meal times.
4. Read a little bit every single day.
5. Eat more home cooked food than junk food.
6. Stand more than you sit.
7. Drink a glass of water first thing in the morning and have at least 8 glasses of water through the day.
8. Go to the doctor and dentist for regular check-ups.
9. Exercise for 30 minutes at least 5 days a week.
10. Avoid consuming lots of aerated beverages.

8.1.1.2 What is Hygiene?

As per the World Health Organization (WHO), “Hygiene refers to conditions and practices that help to maintain health and prevent the spread of diseases.” In other words, hygiene means ensuring that you do whatever is required to keep your surroundings clean, so that you reduce the chances of spreading germs and diseases.

For instance, think about the kitchen in your home. Good hygiene means ensuring that the kitchen is always spick and span, the food is put away, dishes are washed and dustbins are not overflowing with garbage. Doing all this will reduce the chances of attracting pests like rats or cockroaches, and prevent the growth of fungus and other bacteria, which could spread disease.

How many of these health standards do you follow? Tick the ones that apply to you.

1. Have a bath or shower every day with soap – and wash your hair with shampoo 2-3 times a week.
2. Wear a fresh pair of clean undergarments every day.
3. Brush your teeth in the morning and before going to bed.
4. Cut your fingernails and toenails regularly.
5. Wash your hands with soap after going to the toilet.
6. Use an anti-perspirant deodorant on your underarms if you sweat a lot.
7. Wash your hands with soap before cooking or eating.
8. Stay home when you are sick, so other people don't catch what you have.
9. Wash dirty clothes with laundry soap before wearing them again.
10. Cover your nose with a tissue/your hand when coughing or sneezing.

See how healthy and hygienic you are, by giving yourself 1 point for every ticked statement! Then take a look at what your score means.

Your Score

- **0-7/20:** You need to work a lot harder to stay fit and fine! Make it a point to practice good habits daily and see how much better you feel!
- **7-14/20:** Not bad, but there is scope for improvement! Try and add a few more good habits to your daily routine.
- **14-20/20:** Great job! Keep up the good work! Your body and mind thank you!

8.1.1.3 Swachh Bharat Abhiyan

We have already discussed the importance of following good hygiene and health practices for ourselves. But, it is not enough for us to be healthy and hygienic. We must also extend this standard to our homes, our immediate surroundings and to our country as a whole.

The ‘Swachh Bharat Abhiyan’ (Clean India Mission) launched by Prime Minister Shri Narendra Modi on 2nd October 2014, believes in doing exactly this. The aim of this mission is to clean the streets and roads of India and raise the overall level of cleanliness. Currently this mission covers 4,041 cities and towns across the country. Millions of our people have taken the pledge for a clean India. You should take the pledge too, and do everything possible to keep our country clean!

8.1.1.4 What are Habits?

A habit is a behaviour that is repeated frequently. All of us have good habits and bad habits. Keep in mind the phrase by John Dryden: “We first make our habits, and then our habits make us.” This is why it is so important that you make good habits a way of life, and consciously avoid practicing bad habits.

Some good habits that you should make part of your daily routine are:

- Always having a positive attitude
- Making exercise a part of your daily routine
- Reading motivational and inspirational stories
- Smiling! Make it a habit to smile as often as possible
- Making time for family and friends
- Going to bed early and waking up early

Some bad habits that you should quit immediately are:

- Skipping breakfast
- Snacking frequently even when you are not hungry
- Eating too much fattening and sugary food
- Smoking, drinking alcohol and doing drugs
- Spending more money than you can afford
- Worrying about unimportant issues
- Staying up late and waking up late

Tips



- Following healthy and hygienic practices every day will make you feel good mentally and physically.
- Hygiene is two-thirds of health – so good hygiene will help you stay strong and healthy!

8.1.2: Safety: Tips to Design a Safe Workplace

Every employer is obligated to ensure that his workplace follows the highest possible safety protocol. When setting up a business, owners must make it a point to:

- Use ergonomically designed furniture and equipment to avoid stooping and twisting
- Provide mechanical aids to avoid lifting or carrying heavy objects
- Have protective equipment on hand for hazardous jobs
- Designate emergency exits and ensure they are easily accessible
- Set down health codes and ensure they are implemented
- Follow the practice of regular safety inspections in and around the workplace
- Ensure regular building inspections are conducted
- Get expert advice on workplace safety and follow it

8.1.2.1 Negotiable Employee Safety Habits

Every employer is obligated to ensure that his workplace follows the highest possible safety protocol. When setting up a business, owners must make it a point to:

- Immediately report unsafe conditions to a supervisor
- Recognize and report safety hazards that could lead to slips, trips and falls
- Report all injuries and accidents to a supervisor
- Wear the correct protective equipment when required
- Learn how to correctly use equipment provided for safety purposes
- Be aware of and avoid actions that could endanger other people
- Take rest breaks during the day and some time off from work during the week

Tips



- Be aware of what emergency number to call at the time of a workplace emergency
- Practice evacuation drills regularly to avoid chaotic evacuations

8.1.3 Self-Analysis – Attitude, Achievement Motivation

To truly achieve your full potential, you need to take a deep look inside yourself and find out what kind of person you really are. This attempt to understand your personality is known as self-analysis. Assessing yourself in this manner will help you grow, and will also help you to identify areas within yourself that need to be further developed, changed or eliminated. You can better understand yourself by taking a deep look at what motivates you, what your attitude is like, and what your strengths and weaknesses are.

8.1.3.1 What is Motivation?

Very simply put, motivation is your reason for acting or behaving in a certain manner. It is important to understand that not everyone is motivated by the same desires – people are motivated by many, many different things. We can understand this better by looking at Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs.

8.1.3.2 Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs

Famous American psychologist Abraham Maslow wanted to understand what motivates people. He believed that people have five types of needs, ranging from very basic needs (called physiological needs) to more important needs that are required for self-growth (called self-actualization needs). Between the physiological and self-actualization needs are three other needs – safety needs, belongingness and love needs, and esteem needs.

These needs are usually shown as a pyramid with five levels and are known as Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs.

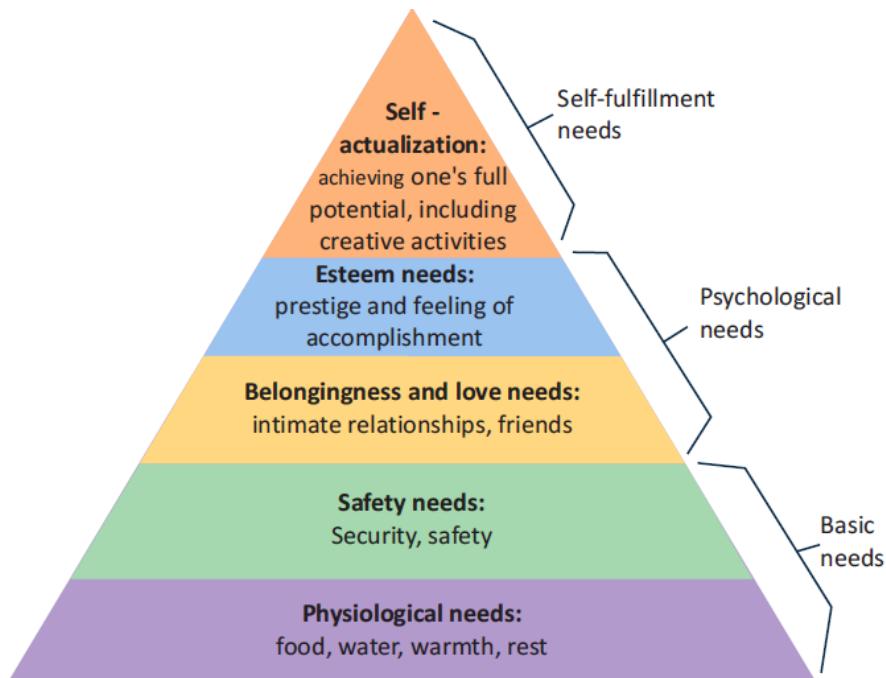


Fig. 8.1.1: Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs

The lowest level depicts the most basic needs. According to Maslow, our behaviour is driven by our basic needs, until those needs are fulfilled. Once they are fulfilled, we move to the next level and are motivated by the next level of needs. Let's understand this better with an example.

Rupa comes from a very poor family. She never has enough food, water, warmth or rest. According to Maslow, until Rupa is sure that she will get these basic needs, she will not even think about the next level of needs – her safety needs. But, once Rupa is confident that her basic needs will be met, she will move to the next level, and her behaviour will then be motivated by her need for security and safety. Once these new needs are met, Rupa will once again move to the next level, and be motivated by her need for relationships and friends. Once this need is satisfied, Rupa will then focus on the fourth level of needs – her esteem needs, after which she will move up to the fifth and last level of needs – the desire to achieve her full potential.

8.1.3.3 Understanding Achievement Motivation

We now know that people are motivated by basic, psychological and self-fulfillment needs. However, certain people are also motivated by the achievement of highly challenging accomplishments. This is known as Achievement Motivation, or 'need for achievement'.

The level of motivation achievement in a person differs from individual to individual. It is important that entrepreneurs have a high level of achievement motivation – a deep desire to accomplish something important and unique. It is equally important that they hire people who are also highly motivated by challenges and success.

What Motivates You?

What are the things that really motivate you? List down five things that really motivate you. Remember to answer honestly!

I am motivated by:

Characteristics of Entrepreneurs with Achievement Motivation

Entrepreneurs with achievement motivation can be described as follows:

- Unafraind to take risks for personal accomplishment
- Love being challenged Future-oriented Flexible and adaptive
- Value negative feedback more than positive feedback
- Very persistent when it comes to achieving goals
- Extremely courageous
- Highly creative and innovative
- Restless - constantly looking to achieve more
- Feel personally responsible for solving problems

Think about it:

- How many of these traits do you have?
- Can you think of entrepreneurs who display these traits?

8.1.3.4 How to Cultivate a Positive Attitude?

The good news is attitude is a choice. So, it is possible to improve, control and change our attitude, if we decide we want to!

The following tips help foster a positive mindset:

- Remember that you control your attitude, not the other way around
- Devote at least 15 minutes a day towards reading, watching or listening to something positive
- Avoid negative people who only complain and stop complaining yourself
- Expand your vocabulary with positive words and delete negative phrases from your mind
- Be appreciative and focus on what's good in yourself, in your life, and in others
- Stop thinking of yourself as a victim and start being proactive
- Imagine yourself succeeding and achieving your goals

8.1.3.5 What is Attitude?

Now that we understand why motivation is so important for self-analysis, let's look at the role our attitude plays in better understanding ourselves. Attitude can be described as your tendency (positive or negative), to think and feel about someone or something. Attitude is the foundation for success in every aspect of life. Our attitude can be our best friend or our worst enemy. In other words:

"The only disability in life is a bad attitude."

When you start a business, you are sure to encounter a wide variety of emotions, from difficult times and failures to good times and successes. Your attitude is what will see you through the tough times and guide you towards success. Attitude is also infectious. It affects everyone around you, from your customers to your employees to your investors. A positive attitude helps build confidence in the workplace while a negative attitude is likely to result in the demotivation of your people.

8.1.3.6 What Are Your Strengths and Weaknesses?

Another way to analyse yourself is by honestly identifying your strengths and weaknesses. This will help you use your strengths to your best advantage and reduce your weaknesses.

Note down all your strengths and weaknesses in the two columns below. Remember to be honest with yourself!

Strengths	Weaknesses

Tips



- Achievement motivation can be learned.
- Don't be afraid to make mistakes.
- Train yourself to finish what you start.
- Dream big.

8.1.4 Honesty & Work Ethics: What is Honesty?

Honesty is the quality of being fair and truthful. It means speaking and acting in a manner that inspires trust. A person who is described as honest is seen as truthful and sincere, and as someone who isn't deceitful or devious and doesn't steal or cheat. There are two dimensions of honesty – one is honesty in communication and the other is honesty in conduct.

Honesty is an extremely important trait because it results in peace of mind and builds relationships that are based on trust. Being dishonest, on the other hand, results in anxiety and leads to relationships full of distrust and conflict.

8.1.4.1 Qualities of Honest People

Honest individuals have certain distinct characteristics. Some common qualities among honest people are:

- They don't worry about what others think of them. They believe in being themselves – they don't bother about whether they are liked or disliked for their personalities.
- They stand up for their beliefs. They won't think twice about giving their honest opinion, even if they are aware that their point of view lies with the minority.
- They are think skinned. This means they are not affected by others judging them harshly for their honest opinions.
- They forge trusting, meaningful and healthy friendships. Honest people usually surround themselves with honest friends. They have faith that their friends will be truthful and upfront with them at all times.

They are trusted by their peers. They are seen as people who can be counted on for truthful and objective feedback and advice.

- **Honesty and employees:** When entrepreneurs build honest relationships with their employees, it leads to more transparency in the workplace, which results in higher work performance and better results.
- **Honesty and investors:** For entrepreneurs, being honest with investors means not only sharing strengths but also candidly disclosing current and potential weaknesses, problem areas and solution strategies. Keep in mind that investors have a lot of experience with startups and are aware that all new companies have problems. Claiming that everything is perfectly fine and running smoothly is a red flag for most investors.

- **Honesty with oneself:** The consequences of being dishonest with oneself can lead to dire results, especially in the case of entrepreneurs. For entrepreneurs to succeed, it is critical that they remain realistic about their situation at all times, and accurately judge every aspect of their enterprise for what it truly is.

8.1.4.2 Importance of Honesty in Entrepreneurs

One of the most important characteristics of entrepreneurs is honesty. When entrepreneurs are honest with their customers, employees and investors, it shows that they respect those that they work with. It is also important that entrepreneurs remain honest with themselves.

Let's look at how being honest would lead to great benefits for entrepreneurs.

- **Honesty and customers:** When entrepreneurs are honest with their customers it leads to stronger relationships, which in turn results in business growth and a stronger customer network.

8.1.4.3 What are Work Ethics?

Being ethical in the workplace means displaying values like honesty, integrity and respect in all your decisions and communications. It means not displaying negative qualities like lying, cheating and stealing.

Workplace ethics play a big role in the profitability of a company. It is as crucial to an enterprise as high morale and teamwork. This is why most companies lay down specific workplace ethic guidelines that must compulsorily be followed by their employees. These guidelines are typically outlined in a company's employee handbook.

8.1.4.4 Elements of a Strong Work Ethic

An entrepreneur must display strong work ethics, as well as hire only those individuals who believe in and display the same level of ethical behavior in the workplace. Some elements of a strong work ethic are:

- **Professionalism:** This involves everything from how you present yourself in a corporate setting to the manner in which you treat others in the workplace.
- **Respectfulness:** This means remaining poised and diplomatic regardless of how stressful or volatile a situation is.
- **Dependability:** This means always keeping your word, whether it's arriving on time for a meeting or delivering work on time.
- **Dedication:** This means refusing to quit until the designated work is done, and completing the work at the highest possible level of excellence.
- **Determination:** This means embracing obstacles as challenges rather than letting them stop you, and pushing ahead with purpose and resilience to get the desired results.

- **Accountability:** This means taking responsibility for your actions and the consequences of your actions, and not making excuses for your mistakes.
- **Humility:** This means acknowledging everyone's efforts and hard work, and sharing the credit for accomplishments.

8.1.4.5 How to Foster a Good Work Ethic?

As an entrepreneur, it is important that you clearly define the kind of behaviour that you expect from each and every team member in the workplace. You should make it clear that you expect employees to display positive work ethics like:

- **Honesty:** All work assigned to a person should be done with complete honesty, without any deceit or lies.
- **Good attitude:** All team members should be optimistic, energetic, and positive.
- **Reliability:** Employees should show up where they are supposed to be, when they are supposed to be there.
- **Good work habits:** Employees should always be well groomed, never use inappropriate language, conduct themselves professionally at all times and so on.
- **Initiative:** Doing the bare minimum is not enough. Every team member needs to be proactive and show initiative.
- **Trustworthiness:** Trust is non-negotiable. If an employee cannot be trusted, it's time to let that employee go.
- **Respect:** Employees need to respect the company, the law, their work, their colleagues and themselves.
- **Integrity:** Each and every team member should be completely ethical and must display above board behaviour at all times.
- **Efficiency:** Efficient employees help a company grow while inefficient employees result in a waste of time and resources.

Tips

- Don't get angry when someone tells you the truth and you don't like what you hear.
- Always be willing to accept responsibility for your mistakes.

8.1.5 Creativity & Innovation

What is Creativity?

Creativity means thinking outside the box. It means viewing things in new ways or from different perspectives, and then converting these ideas into reality. Creativity involves two parts: thinking and producing. Simply having an idea makes you imaginative, not creative. However, having an idea and acting on it makes you creative.

Characteristics of Highly Creative People

Some characteristics of creative people are:

- They are imaginative and playful
- They see issues from different angles
- They notice small details
- They have very little tolerance for boredom
- They detest rules and routine
- They love to daydream
- They are very curious

What is Innovation?

There are many different definitions of innovation. In simple terms, innovation means turning an idea into a solution that adds value. It can also mean adding value by implementing a new product, service or process, or significantly improving on an existing product, service or process.

Characteristics of Highly Innovative People

Some characteristics of highly innovative people are:

- They embrace doing things differently
- They don't believe in taking shortcuts
- They are not afraid to be unconventional
- They are highly proactive and persistent
- They are organized, cautious and risk-averse

Tips

- Take regular breaks from your creative work to recharge yourself and gain fresh perspective.
- Build prototypes frequently, test them out, get feedback, and make the required changes.

8.1.6 Time Management

Time management is the process organizing your time, and deciding how to allocate your time between different activities. Good time management is the difference between working smart (getting more done in less time) and working hard (working for more time to get more done).

Effective time management leads to an efficient work output, even when you are faced with tight deadlines and high pressure situations. On the other hand, not managing your time effectively results in inefficient output and increases stress and anxiety.

Benefits of Time Management

Time management can lead to huge benefits like:

- Greater productivity
- Higher efficiency
- Better professional reputation
- Reduced stress
- Higher chances for career advancement
- Greater opportunities to achieve goals

Not managing time effectively can result in undesirable consequences like:

- Missing deadlines
- Inefficient work output
- Substandard work quality
- Poor professional reputation
- Stalled career
- Increase in stress and anxiety

8.1.6.1 Traits of Effective Time Managers

Some traits of effective time managers are:

- They begin projects early
- They set daily objectives
- They modify plans if required, to achieve better results
- They are flexible and open-minded
- They inform people in advance if their help will be required
- They know how to say no
- They break tasks into steps with specific deadlines
- They continually review long term goals
- They think of alternate solutions if and when required
- They ask for help when required
- They create backup plans

8.1.6.2 Effective Time Management Techniques

You can manage your time better by putting into practice certain time management techniques. Some helpful tips are:

- **Plan out your day as well as plan for interruptions.** Give yourself at least 30 minutes to figure out your time plan. In your plan, schedule some time for interruptions.
- **Put up a “Do Not Disturb” sign** when you absolutely have to complete a certain amount of work.
- **Close your mind to all distractions.** Train yourself to ignore ringing phones, don’t reply to chat messages and disconnect from social media sites.
- **Delegate your work.** This will not only help your work get done faster, but will also show you the unique skills and abilities of those around you.
- **Stop procrastinating.** Remind yourself that procrastination typically arises due to the fear of failure or the belief that you cannot do things as perfectly as you wish to do them.
- **Prioritize.** List each task to be completed in order of its urgency or importance level. Then focus on completing each task, one by one.
- **Maintain a log of your work activities.** Analyse the log to help you understand how efficient you are, and how much time is wasted every day.
- **Create time management goals** to reduce time wastage.

Tips



- Always complete the most important tasks first.
- Get at least 7 – 8 hours of sleep every day.
- Start your day early.
- Don’t waste too much time on small, unimportant details.
- Set a time limit for every task that you will undertake.
- Give yourself some time to unwind between tasks.

8.1.7 Anger Management

Anger management is the process of:

1. Learning to recognize the signs that you, or someone else, is becoming angry
2. Taking the best course of action to calm down the situation in a positive way

Anger management does not mean suppressing anger.

Importance of Anger Management

Anger is a perfectly normal human emotion. In fact, when managed the right way, anger can be considered a healthy emotion. However, if it is not kept in check, anger can make us act inappropriately and can lead to us saying or doing things that we will likely later regret.

Extreme anger can:

- **Hurt you physically:** It leads to heart disease, diabetes, a weakened immune system, insomnia, and high blood pressure.
- **Hurt you mentally:** It can cloud your thinking and lead to stress, depression and mental health issues.
- **Hurt your career:** It can result in alienating your colleagues, bosses, clients and lead to the loss of respect.
- **Hurt your relationships:** It makes it hard for your family and friends to trust you, be honest with you and feel comfortable around you.

This is why anger management, or managing anger appropriately, is so important.

8.1.7.1 Anger Management Strategies

Here are some strategies that can help you control your anger:

Strategy 1: Relaxation

Something as simple as breathing deeply and looking at relaxing images works wonders in calming down angry feelings. Try this simple breathing exercise:

1. Take a deep breath from your diaphragm (don't breathe from your chest)
2. Visualize your breath coming up from your stomach
3. Keep repeating a calming word like 'relax' or 'take it easy' (remember to keep breathing deeply while repeating the word)
4. Picture a relaxing moment (this can be from your memory or your imagination)

Follow this relaxation technique daily, especially when you realize that you're starting to feel angry.

Strategy 2: Cognitive Restructuring

Cognitive restructuring means changing the manner in which you think. Anger can make you curse, swear, exaggerate and act very dramatically. When this happens, force yourself to replace your angry thoughts with more logical ones. For instance, instead of thinking 'Everything is ruined' change your mindset and tell yourself 'It's not the end of the world and getting angry won't solve this'.

Strategy 3: Problem Solving

Getting angry about a problem that you cannot control is a perfectly natural response. Sometimes, try as you may, there may not be a solution to the difficulty you are faced with. In such cases, stop focusing on solving the problem, and instead focus on handling and facing the problem. Remind yourself that you will do your best to deal with the situation, but that you will not blame yourself if you don't get the solution you desire.

Strategy 4: Better Communication

When you're angry, it is very easy to jump to inaccurate conclusions. In this case, you need to force yourself to stop reacting, and think carefully about what you want to say, before saying it. Avoid saying the first thing that enters your head. Force yourself to listen carefully to what the other person is saying. Then think about the conversation before responding.

Strategy 5: Changing Your Environment

If you find that your environment is the cause of your anger, try and give yourself a break from your surroundings. Make an active decision to schedule some personal time for yourself, especially on days that are very hectic and stressful. Having even a brief amount of quiet or alone time is sure to help calm you down.

8.1.7.2 Tips for Anger Management



The following tips will help you keep your anger in check:

- Take some time to collect your thoughts before you speak out in anger.
- Express the reason for your anger in an assertive, but non-confrontational manner once you have calmed down.
- Do some form of physical exercise like running or walking briskly when you feel yourself getting angry.
- Make short breaks part of your daily routine, especially during days that are stressful.
- Focus on how to solve a problem that's making you angry, rather than focusing on the fact that the problem is making you angry.

8.1.8 Stress Management

We say we are 'stressed' when we feel overloaded and unsure of our ability to deal with the pressures placed on us. Anything that challenges or threatens our well-being can be defined as a stress. It is important to note that stress can be good and bad. While good stress keeps us going, negative stress undermines our mental and physical health. This is why it is so important to manage negative stress effectively.

Causes of Stress

Stress can be caused by internal and external factors.

Internal causes of stress

- Constant worry
- Rigid thinking
- Unrealistic expectations
- Pessimism
- Negative self-talk
- All in or all out attitude

External causes of stress

- Major life changes
- Difficulties with relationships
- Having too much to do
- Difficulties at work or in school
- Financial difficulties
- Worrying about one's children and/or family

8.1.8.1 Symptoms of Stress

Stress can manifest itself in numerous ways. Take a look at the cognitive, emotional, physical and behavioural symptoms of stress.

Cognitive Symptoms	Emotional Symptoms
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Memory problems • Concentration issues • Lack of judgement • Pessimism • Anxiety • Constant worrying 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Depression • Agitation • Irritability • Loneliness • Anxiety • Anger

Fig. 7.1.2: Stress symptoms

Physical Symptoms	Behavioural Symptoms
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Aches and pain • Diarrhoea or constipation • Nausea • Dizziness • Chest pain and/or rapid heartbeat • Frequent cold or flu like feelings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increase or decrease in appetite • Over sleeping or not sleeping enough • Withdrawing socially • Ignoring responsibilities • Consumption of alcohol or cigarettes • Nervous habits like nail biting and pacing

Fig. 8.1.3: Stress symptoms

8.1.8.2 Tips to Manage Stress

The following tips can help you manage your stress better:

- Note down the different ways in which you can handle the various sources of your stress.
- Remember that you cannot control everything, but you can control how you respond.
- Discuss your feelings, opinions and beliefs rather than reacting angrily, defensively or passively.
- Practice relaxation techniques like meditation, yoga or tai chi when you start feeling stressed.
- Devote a part of your day towards exercise.
- Eat healthy foods like fruits and vegetables. Avoid unhealthy foods especially those containing large amounts of sugar.
- Plan your day so that you can manage your time better, with less stress.
- Say no to people and things when required.
- Schedule time to pursue your hobbies and interests.
- Ensure you get at least 7-8 hours of sleep.
- Reduce your caffeine intake.
- Increase the time spent with family and friends.

UNIT 8.2: Digital Literacy: A Recap

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Identify the basic parts of a computer
2. Identify the basic parts of a keyboard
3. Recall basic computer terminology
4. Recall the functions of basic computer keys
5. Discuss the main applications of MS Office
6. Discuss the benefits of Microsoft Outlook
7. Discuss the different types of e-commerce
8. List the benefits of e-commerce for retailers and customers
9. Discuss how the Digital India campaign will help boost e-commerce in India
10. Describe how you will sell a product or service on an e-commerce platform

8.2.1 Computer and Internet Basics

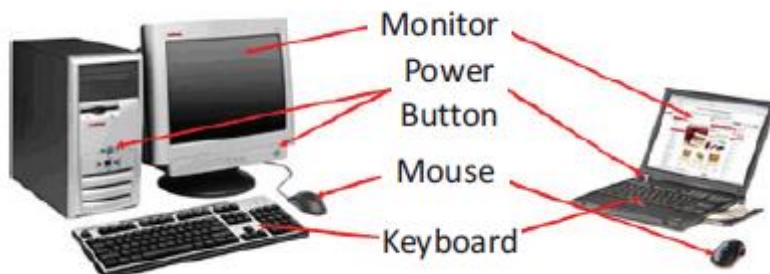


Fig. 8.2.1: Parts of a Computer

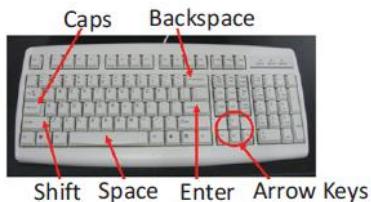


Fig. 8.2.2: Parts of a Keyboard

Basic Parts of a Computer

1. **Central Processing Unit (CPU):** The brain of the computer. It interprets and carries out program instructions.
2. **Hard Drive:** A device that stores large amounts of data.
3. **Monitor:** The device that contains the computer screen where the information is visually displayed.

4. **Desktop:** The first screen displayed after the operating system loads.
5. **Background:** The image that fills the background of the desktop.
6. **Mouse:** A hand-held device used to point to items on the monitor.
7. **Speakers:** Devices that enable you to hear sound from the computer.
8. **Printer:** A device that converts output from a computer into printed paper documents.
9. **Icon:** A small picture or image that visually represents something on your computer.
10. **Cursor:** An arrow which indicates where you are positioned on the screen.
11. **Program Menu:** A list of programs on your computer that can be accessed from the Start menu.
12. **Taskbar:** The horizontal bar at the bottom of the computer screen that lists applications that are currently in use.
13. **Recycle Bin:** A temporary storage for deleted files.

Basic Internet Terms

- **The Internet:** A vast, international collection of computer networks that transfers information.
- **The World Wide Web:** A system that lets you access information on the Internet.
- **Website:** A location on the World Wide Web (and Internet) that contains information about a specific topic.
- **Homepage:** Provides information about a website and directs you to other pages on that website.
- **Link/Hyperlink:** A highlighted or underlined icon, graphic, or text that takes you to another file or object.
- **Web Address/URL:** The address for a website.
- **Address Box:** A box in the browser window where you can type in a web address.

Basic Computer Keys

- **Arrow Keys:** Press these keys to move your cursor.
- **Space bar:** Adds a space.
- **Enter/Return:** Moves your cursor to a new line.
- **Shift:** Press this key if you want to type a capital letter or the upper symbol of a key.
- **Caps Lock:** Press this key if you want all the letters you type to be capital letters. Press it again to revert back to typing lowercase letters.
- **Backspace:** Deletes everything to the left of your cursor

Tips

- When visiting a .com address, there no need to type http:// or even www. Just type the name of the website and then press Ctrl + Enter. (Example: Type 'apple' and press Ctrl + Enter to go to www.apple.com)
- Press the Ctrl key and press the + or - to increase and decrease the size of text.
- Press F5 or Ctrl + R to refresh or reload a web page.

8.2.2 MS Office and Email

About MS Office

MS Office or Microsoft Office is a suite of computer programs developed by Microsoft. Although meant for all users, it offers different versions that cater specifically to students, home users and business users. All the programs are compatible with both, Windows and Macintosh.

Most Popular Office Products

Some of the most popular and universally used MS Office applications are:

- **Microsoft Word:** Allows users to type text and add images to a document.
- **Microsoft Excel:** Allows users to enter data into a spreadsheet and create calculations and graphs.
- **Microsoft PowerPoint:** Allows users to add text, pictures and media and create slideshows and presentations.
- **Microsoft Outlook:** Allows users to send and receive email.
- **Microsoft OneNote:** Allows users to make drawings and notes with the feel of a pen on paper.
- **Microsoft Access:** Allows users to store data over many tables.

Why Choose Microsoft Outlook?

A popular email management choice especially in the workplace, Microsoft Outlook also includes an address book, notebook, web browser and calendar. Some major benefits of this program are:

- **Integrated search function:** You can use keywords to search for data across all Outlook programs.
- **Enhanced security:** Your email is safe from hackers, junk mail and phishing website email.
- **Email syncing:** Sync your mail with your calendar, contact list, notes in One Note and...your phone!
- **Offline access to email:** No Internet? No problem! Write emails offline and send them when you're connected again.

Tips



- Press Ctrl+R as a shortcut method to reply to email.
- Set your desktop notifications only for very important emails.
- Flag messages quickly by selecting messages and hitting the Insert key.
- Save frequently sent emails as a template to reuse again and again.
- Conveniently save important emails as files.

8.2.3 E-Commerce

What is E-Commerce?

E-commerce is the buying or selling of goods and services, or the transmitting of money or data, electronically on the internet. E-Commerce is the short form for “electronic commerce.”

Examples of E-Commerce

Some examples of e-commerce are:

- Online shopping
- Online auctions
- Online ticketing
- Electronic payments
- Internet banking

Types of E-Commerce

E-commerce can be classified based on the types of participants in the transaction. The main types of e-commerce are:

- **Business to Business (B2B):** Both the transacting parties are businesses.
- **Business to Consumer (B2C):** Businesses sell electronically to end-consumers.
- **Consumer to Consumer (C2C):** Consumers come together to buy, sell or trade items to other consumers.
- **Consumer-to-Business (C2B):** Consumers make products or services available for purchase to companies looking for exactly those services or products.
- **Business-to-Administration (B2A):** Online transactions conducted between companies and public administration.
- **Consumer-to-Administration (C2A):** Online transactions conducted between individual and public administration.

8.2.3.1 Benefits of E-Commerce

The e-commerce business provides some benefits for retailers and customers.

Benefits for retailers

- Establishes an online presence
- Reduces operational costs by removing overhead costs
- Increases brand awareness through the use of good keywords
- Increases sales by removing geographical and time constraints

Benefits for customers

- Offers a wider range of choice than any physical store
- Enables goods and services to be purchased from remote locations
- Enables consumers to perform price comparisons

8.2.3.2 Digital India Campaign

Prime Minister Narendra Modi launched the Digital India campaign in 2015, with the objective of offering every citizen of India access to digital services, knowledge and information. The campaign aims to improve the country's online infrastructure and increase internet connectivity, thus boosting the e-commerce industry.

Currently, the majority of online transactions come from tier 2 and tier 3 cities. Once the Digital India campaign is in place, the government will deliver services through mobile connectivity, which will help deliver internet to remote corners of the country. This will help the e-commerce market to enter India's tier 4 towns and rural areas.

E-Commerce Activity

Choose a product or service that you want to sell online. Write a brief note explaining how you will use existing e-commerce platforms, or create a new e-commerce platform, to sell your product or service.

Tips



- Before launching your e-commerce platform, test everything.
- Pay close and personal attention to your social media.

UNIT 8.3: Money Matters

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Discuss the importance of saving money
2. Discuss the benefits of saving money
3. Discuss the main types of bank accounts
4. Describe the process of opening a bank account
5. Differentiate between fixed and variable costs
6. Describe the main types of investment options
7. Describe the different types of insurance products
8. Describe the different types of taxes
9. Discuss the uses of online banking
10. Discuss the main types of electronic funds transfers

8.3.1 Personal Finance – Why to Save?

Importance of Saving

We all know that the future is unpredictable. You never know what will happen tomorrow, next week or next year. That's why saving money steadily through the years is so important. Saving money will help improve your financial situation over time. But more importantly, knowing that you have money stashed away for an emergency will give you peace of mind. Saving money also opens the door to many more options and possibilities.

Benefits of Saving

Inculcating the habit of saving leads to a vast number of benefits. Saving helps you:

- **Become financially independent:** When you have enough money saved up to feel secure you can start making your choices, from taking a vacation whenever you want, to switching careers or starting your own business.
- **Invest in yourself through education:** Through saving, you can earn enough to pay up for courses that will add to your professional experience and ultimately result in higher paying jobs.
- **Get out of debt:** Once you have saved enough as a reserve fund, you can use your savings to pay off debts like loans or bills that have accumulated over time.
- **Be prepared for surprise expenses:** Having money saved enables you to pay for unforeseen expenses like sudden car or house repairs, without feeling financially stressed.
- **Pay for emergencies:** Saving helps you deal with emergencies like sudden health issues or emergency trips without feeling financially burdened.

- **Afford large purchases and achieve major goals:** Saving diligently makes it possible to place down payments towards major purchases and goals, like buying a home or a car.
- **Retire:** The money you have saved over the years will keep you comfortable when you no longer have the income you would get from your job.

Tips

- Break your spending habit. Try not spending on one expensive item per week, and put the money that you would have spent into your savings.
- Decide that you will not buy anything on certain days or weeks and stick to your word.

8.3.2 Types of Bank Accounts

In India, banks offer four main types of bank accounts. These are:

1. Current Accounts
2. Savings Accounts
3. Recurring Deposit Accounts
4. Fixed Deposit Accounts

Current Accounts

Current accounts offer the most liquid deposits and thus, are best suited for businessmen and companies. As these accounts are not meant for investments and savings, there is no imposed limit on the number or amount of transactions that can be made on any given day. Current account holders are not paid any interest on the amounts held in their accounts. They are charged for certain services offered on such accounts.

Saving Accounts

Savings accounts are meant to promote savings, and are therefore the number one choice for salaried individuals, pensioners and students. While there is no restriction on the number and amount of deposits made, there are usually restrictions on the number and amount of withdrawals. Savings account holders are paid interest on their savings.

Recurring Deposit Accounts

Recurring Deposit accounts, also called RD accounts, are the accounts of choice for those who want to save an amount every month, but are unable to invest a large sum at one time. Such account holders deposit a small, fixed amount every month for a pre-determined period (minimum 6 months). Defaulting on a monthly payment results in the account holder being charged a penalty amount. The total amount is repaid with interest at the end of the specified period.

Fixed Deposit Accounts

Fixed Deposit accounts, also called FD accounts, are ideal for those who wish to deposit their savings for a long term in return for a high rate of interest. The rate of interest offered depends on the amount deposited and the time period, and also differs from bank to bank. In the case of an FD, a certain amount of money is deposited by the account holder for a fixed period of time. The money can be withdrawn when the period expires. If necessary, the depositor can break the fixed deposit prematurely. However, this usually attracts a penalty amount which also differs from bank to bank.

8.3.2.1 Opening a Bank Account

Opening a bank account is quite a simple process. Take a look at the steps to open an account of your own:

Step 1: Fill in the Account Opening Form

This form requires you to provide the following information:

- Personal details (name, address, phone number, date of birth, gender, occupation, address)
- Method of receiving your account statement (hard copy/email)
- Details of your initial deposit (cash/cheque)
- Manner of operating your account (online/mobile banking/traditional via cheque, slip books)
- Ensure that you sign wherever required on the form.

Step 2: Affix your Photograph

Stick a recent photograph of yourself in the allotted space on the form.

Step 3: Provide your Know Your Customer (KYC) Details

KYC is a process that helps banks verify the identity and address of their customers. To open an account, every individual need to submit certain approved documents with respect to photo identity (ID) and address proof. Some Officially Valid Documents (OVDs) are:

- Passport
- Driving License
- Voters' Identity Card
- PAN Card
- UIDAI (Aadhar) Card

Step 4: Submit All your Documents

Submit the completed Account Opening Form and KYC documents. Then wait until the forms are processed and your account has been opened!

Tips

- Select the right type of account.
- Fill in complete nomination details.
- Ask about fees.
- Understand the rules.
- Check for online banking – it's convenient!
- Keep an eye on your bank balance.

8.3.3 Costs: Fixed vs Variable

What are Fixed and Variable Costs?

Fixed costs and variable costs together make up a company's total cost. These are the two types of costs that companies have to bear when producing goods and services. A fixed cost does not change with the volume of goods or services a company produces. It always remains the same.

A variable cost, on the other hand, increases and decreases depending on the volume of goods and services produced. In other words, it varies with the amount produced.

Differences between Fixed and Variable Costs

Let's take a look at some of the main differences between fixed and variable costs:

Criteria	Fixed Costs	Variable Costs
Meaning	A cost that stays the same, regardless of the output produced.	A cost that changes when the
Nature	Time related.	Volume related.
Incurred	Incurred irrespective of units being produced.	Incurred only when units are produced
Unit cost	Inversely proportional to the number of units produced	Remains the same, per unit.
Examples	Depreciation, rent, salary, insurance and tax	Material consumed, wages, commission on sales and packing expenses

Fig. 8.3.1: Fixed and variable costs

Tips

- When trying to determine whether a cost is fixed or variable, simply ask the following question: Will the particular cost change if the company stopped its production activities? If the answer is no, then it is a fixed cost. If the answer is yes, then it is probably a variable cost.

8.3.4 Investment, Insurance and Taxes

Investment

Investment means that money is spent today with the aim of reaping financial gains at a future time. The main types of investment options are as follows:

- Bonds:** Bonds are instruments used by public and private companies to raise large sums of money – too large to be borrowed from a bank. These bonds are then issued in the public market and are bought by lenders.
- Stocks:** Stocks or equity are shares that are issued by companies and are bought by the general public.
- Small Savings Schemes:** Small Savings Schemes are tools meant to save money in small amounts. Some popular schemes are the Employees Provident Fund, Sukanya Samriddhi Scheme and National Pension Scheme.
- Mutual Funds:** Mutual Funds are professionally managed financial instruments that invest money in different securities on behalf of investors.
- Fixed Deposits:** A fixed amount of money is kept aside with a financial institution for a fixed amount of time in return for interest on the money.
- Real Estate:** Loans are taken from banks to purchase real estate, which is then leased or sold with the aim of making a profit on the appreciated property price.
- Hedge Funds:** Hedge funds invest in both financial derivatives and/or publicly traded securities.
- Private Equity:** Private Equity is trading in the shares of an operating company that is not publicly listed and whose shares are not available on the stock market.
- Venture Capital:** Venture Capital involves investing substantial capital in a budding company in return for stocks in that company.

Insurance

There are two types of insurance, Life Insurance and General Insurance.

Life Insurance Products

The main life insurance products are:

- Term Insurance:** This is the simplest and cheapest form of insurance. It offers financial protection for a specified tenure, say 15 to 20 years. In the case of your death, your family is paid the sum assured. In the case of your surviving the term, the insurer pays nothing.

- **Endowment Policy:** This offers the dual benefit of insurance and investment. Part of the premium is allocated towards the sum assured, while the remaining premium gets invested in equity and debt. It pays a lump sum amount after the specified duration or on the death of the policyholder, whichever is earlier.
- **Unit-Linked Insurance Plan (ULIP):** Here part of the premium is spent on the life cover, while the remaining amount is invested in equity and debt. It helps develop a regular saving habit.
- **Money Back Life Insurance:** While the policyholder is alive, periodic payments of the partial survival benefits are made during the policy tenure. On the death of the insured, the insurance company pays the full sum assured along with survival benefits.
- **Whole Life Insurance:** It offers the dual benefit of insurance and investment. It offers insurance cover for the whole life of the person or up to 100 years whichever is earlier.

General Insurance

General Insurance deals with all insurance covering assets like animals, agricultural crops, goods, factories, cars and so on.

General Insurance Products

The main general insurance products are:

- **Motor Insurance:** This can be divided into Four-Wheeler Insurance and Two-Wheeler insurance.
- **Health Insurance:** The main types of health insurance are individual health insurance, family floater health insurance, comprehensive health insurance and critical illness insurance.
- **Travel Insurance:** This can be categorised into Individual Travel Policy, Family Travel Policy, Student Travel Insurance and Senior Citizen Health Insurance.
- **Home Insurance:** This protects the house and its contents from risk.
- **Marine Insurance:** This insurance covers goods, freight and cargo against loss or damage during transit by rail, road, sea and/or air.

Taxes

There are two types of taxes:

1. Direct Taxes
2. Indirect Taxes.

Direct Tax

Direct taxes are levied directly on an entity or a person and are non-transferrable. Some examples of Direct Taxes are:

- **Income Tax:** This tax is levied on your earning in a financial year. It is applicable to both, individuals and companies.
- **Capital Gains Tax:** This tax is payable whenever you receive a sizable amount of money. It is usually of two types – short term capital gains from investments held for less than 36 months and long term capital gains from investments held for longer than 36 months.

- **Securities Transaction Tax:** This tax is added to the price of a share. It is levied every time you buy or sell shares.
- **Perquisite Tax:** This tax is levied on perks that have been acquired by a company or used by an employee.
- **Corporate Tax:** Corporate tax is paid by companies from the revenue they earn.

Indirect Tax

Indirect taxes are levied on goods or services. Some examples of Indirect Taxes are:

- **Sales Tax:** Sales Tax is levied on the sale of a product.
- **Service Tax:** Service Tax is added to services provided in India.
- **Value Added Tax:** Value Added Tax is levied at the discretion of the state government. The tax is levied on goods sold in the state. The tax amount is decided by the state.
- **Customs Duty & Octroi:** Customs Duty is a charge that is applied on purchases that are imported from another country. Octroi is levied on goods that cross state borders within India.
- **Excise Duty:** Excise Duty is levied on all goods manufactured or produced in India

Tips



- Think about how quickly you need your money back and pick an investment option accordingly.
- Ensure that you are buying the right type of insurance policy for yourself.
- Remember, not paying taxes can result in penalties ranging from fines to imprisonment.

8.3.5 Online Banking, NEFT, RTGS etc.

What is Online Banking?

Internet or online banking allows account holders to access their account from a laptop at any location. In this way, instructions can be issued. To access an account, account holders simply need to use their unique customer ID number and password.

Internet banking can be used to:

- Find out an account balance
- Transfer amounts from one account to another
- Arrange for the issuance of cheques
- Instruct payments to be made
- Request for a cheque book
- Request for a statement of accounts
- Make a fixed deposit

Electronic Funds Transfers

Electronic funds transfer is a convenient way of transferring money from the comfort of one's own home, using integrated banking tools like internet and mobile banking.

Transferring funds via an electronic gateway is extremely convenient. With the help of online banking, you can choose transferring funds:

- Into your accounts of the same bank.
- Into other people's accounts of the same bank.
- Into accounts in different banks through NEFT.
- Into other bank accounts though RTGS.
- Into various accounts through IMPS.

NEFT

NEFT stands for National Electronic Funds Transfer. This money transfer system allows you to electronically transfer funds from your respective bank accounts to any other account, either in the same bank or belonging to any other bank. NEFT can be used by individuals, firms and corporate organizations to transfer funds between accounts.

In order to transfer funds via NEFT, two things are required:

- A transferring bank
- A destination bank

Before you can transfer funds through NEFT, you will need to register the beneficiary who will be receiving the funds. In order to complete this registration, you will require the following information:

- Recipient's name
- Recipient's account number
- Recipient's bank's name
- Recipient's bank's IFSC code

RTGS

RTGS stands for Real Time Gross Settlement. This is a real time funds transfer system which enables you to transfer funds from one bank to another, in real time or on a gross basis. The transferred amount is immediately deducted from the account of one bank, and instantly credited to the other bank's account. The RTGS payment gateway is maintained by the Reserve Bank of India. The transactions between banks are made electronically.

RTGS can be used by individuals, companies and firms to transfer large sums of money. Before remitting funds through RTGS, you will need to add the beneficiary and his bank account details via your online banking account.

In order to complete this registration, you will require the following information:

- Name of the beneficiary
- Beneficiary's account number
- Beneficiary's bank address
- Bank's IFSC code

IMPS

IMPS stands for Immediate Payment Service. This is a real-time, inter-bank, electronic funds transfer system used to transfer money instantly within banks across India. IMPS enables users to make instant electronic transfer payments using mobile phones through both, Mobile Banking and SMS. It can also be used through ATMs and online banking. IMPS is available 24 hours a day and 7 days a week. The system features a secure transfer gateway and immediately confirms orders that have been fulfilled.

To transfer money through IMPS, you need to:

- Register for IMPS with your bank
- Receive a Mobile Money Identifier (MMID) from the bank
- Receive a MPIN from the bank

Once you have both these, you can login or make a request through SMS to transfer a particular amount to a beneficiary.

In order for the beneficiary to receive the transferred money, he must:

- Link his mobile number with his respective account
- Receive the MMID from the bank

In order to initiate a money transfer through IMPS, you will need to enter the following information:

- The beneficiary's mobile number
- The beneficiary's MMID
- The transfer amount
- Your MPIN

As soon as money has been deducted from your account and credited into the beneficiary's account, you will be sent a confirmation SMS with a transaction reference number, for future reference.

8.3.5.1 Differences between NEFT, RTGS & IMPS

Criteria	NEFT	RTGS	IMPS
Settlement	Done in batches	Real-time	Real-time
Full form	National Electronic Fund Transfer	Real Time Gross Settlement	Immediate Payment Service
Timings on Monday – Friday	8:00 am – 6:30 pm	9:00 am – 4:30 pm	24x7
Timings on Saturday	8:00 am – 1:00 pm	9:00 am – 1:30 pm	24x7
Minimum amount of money transfer limit	₹1	₹2 lacs	₹1
Maximum amount of money transfer limit	₹10 lacs	₹10 lacs per day	₹2 lacs
Maximum charges as per RBI	Up to 10,000 – ₹2.5 above 10,000 – 1 lac – ₹5 above 1 – 2 lacs ₹15 above 2 – 5 lacs ₹25 above 5 – 10 lacs ₹25	above 2 – 5 lacs ₹25 above 5 – 10 lacs ₹50	Up to 10,000 – ₹5 above 10,000 – 1 lac – ₹5 above 1 – 2 lacs – ₹15

Fig. 7.3.2: Differences between NEFT, RTGS & IMPS

Tips



- Never click on any links in any e-mail message to access your online banking website.
- You will never be asked for your credit or debit card details while using online banking.
- Change your online banking password regularly.

UNIT 8.4: Preparing for Employment & Self-Employment

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Discuss the steps to prepare for an interview
2. Discuss the steps to create an effective Resume
3. Discuss the most frequently asked interview questions
4. Discuss how to answer the most frequently asked interview questions
5. Discuss basic workplace terminology

8.4.1 Interview Preparation: How to Prepare for an Interview?

The success of your getting the job that you want depends largely on how well your interview for that job goes. Therefore, before you go in for your interview, it is important that you prepare for it with a fair amount of research and planning. Take a look at the steps to follow in order to be well prepared for an interview:

- 1. Research the organization that you are having the interview with.**
 - Studying the company beforehand will help you be more prepared at the time of the interview. Your knowledge of the organization will help you answer questions at the time of the interview, and will leave you looking and feeling more confident. This is sure to make you stand out from other, not as well informed, candidates.
 - Look for background information on the company. Try and find an overview of the company and its industry profile.
 - Visit the company website to get a good idea of what the company does. A company website offers a wealth of important information. Read and understand the company's mission statement. Pay attention to the company's products/services and client list. Read through any press releases to get an idea of the company's projected growth and stability.
 - Note down any questions that you have after your research has been completed.
- 2. Think about whether your skills and qualifications match the job requirements.**
 - Carefully read through and analyse the job description.
 - Make a note of the knowledge, skills and abilities required to fulfil the job requirements.
 - Take a look at the organization hierarchy. Figure out where the position you are applying for fits into this hierarchy.

- 3. Go through the most typical interview questions asked, and prepare your responses.**
 - Remember, in most interviews a mix of resume-based, behavioural and case study questions are asked.
 - Think about the kind of answers you would like to provide to typical questions asked in these three areas.
 - Practice these answers until you can express them confidently and clearly.
- 4. Plan your attire for the interview.**
 - It is always safest to opt for formal business attire, unless expressly informed to dress in business casual (in which case you should use your best judgement).
 - Ensure that your clothes are clean and well-ironed. Pick neutral colours – nothing too bright or flashy.
 - The shoes you wear should match your clothes, and should be clean and suitable for an interview.
 - Remember, your aim is to leave everyone you meet with the impression that you are a professional and highly efficient person.
- 5. Ensure that you have packed everything that you may require during the interview.**
 - Carry a few copies of your resume. Use a good quality paper for your resume print outs.
 - Always take along a notepad and a pen.
 - Take along any information you may need to refer to, in order to fill out an application form.
 - Carry a few samples of your work, if relevant.
- 6. Remember the importance of non-verbal communication.**
 - Practice projecting confidence. Remind yourself to smile and make eye contact. Practice giving a firm handshake.
 - Keep in mind the importance of posture. Practice sitting up straight. Train yourself to stop nervous gestures like fidgeting and foot-tapping.
 - Practice keeping your reactions in check. Remember, your facial expressions provide a good insight into your true feelings. Practice projecting a positive image.
- 7. Make a list of questions to end the interview with.**
 - Most interviews will end with the interviewer(s) asking if you have any questions. This is your chance to show that you have done your research and are interested in learning more about the company.
 - If the interviewer does not ask you this question, you can inform him/her that you have some queries that you would like to discuss. This is the time for you to refer to the notes you made while studying the company.
 - Some good questions to ask at this point are:
 - What do you consider the most important criteria for success in this job?
 - How will my performance be evaluated?
 - What are the opportunities for advancement?
 - What are the next steps in the hiring process?
 - Remember, never ask for information that is easily available on the company website.

Tips

- Ask insightful and probing questions.
- When communicating, use effective forms of body language like smiling, making eye contact, and actively listening and nodding. Don't slouch, play with nearby items, fidget, chew gum, or mumble.

8.4.2 Preparing an Effective Resume

A resume is a formal document that lists a candidate's work experience, education and skills. A good resume gives a potential employer enough information to believe the applicant is worth interviewing. That's why it is so important to create a résumé that is effective. Take a look at the steps to create an effective resume:

Step 1: Write the Address Section

The Address section occupies the top of your resume. It includes information like your name, address, phone number and e-mail address. Insert a bold line under the section to separate it from rest of your resume.

Example:

Jasmine Watts
Breach Candy, Mumbai – India
Contact No: +91 2223678270
Email: jasmine.watts@gmail.com

Step 2: Add the Profile Summary Section

This part of your resume should list your overall experiences, achievements, awards, certifications and strengths. You can make your summary as short as 2-3 bullet points or as long as 8-10 bullet points.

Example:

Profile Summary

- A Content Writer graduated from University of Strathclyde having 6 years of experience in writing website copy.
- Core expertise lies in content creation for e-learning courses, specifically for the K-12 segment.

Step 3: Include Your Educational Qualifications

When listing your academic records, first list your highest degree. Then add the second highest qualification under the highest one and so on. To provide a clear and accurate picture of your educational background, it is critical that include information on your position, rank, percentage or CPI for every degree or certification that you have listed.

If you have done any certifications and trainings, you can add a Trainings & Certifications section under your Educational Qualifications section.

Example:

Educational Qualifications

- Masters in International Management (2007) from Columbia University with 8.8 CPI.
- Bachelor of Management Studies (2004) from Mumbai University with 87% marks.
- 10+2 with Math, Stats (2001) from Maharashtra Board with 91% marks.
- High School (1999) from Maharashtra Board with 93% marks.

Step 4: List Your Technical Skills

When listing your technical skills, start with the skills that you are most confident about. Then add the skills that you do not have as good a command over. It is perfectly acceptable to include just one skill, if you feel that particular skill adds tremendous value to your résumé. If you do not have any technical skills, you can omit this step.

Example:

Technical Skills

- Flash
- Photoshop

Step 5: Insert Your Academic Project Experience

List down all the important projects that you have worked on. Include the following information in this section:

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| • Project title | • Organization | • Platform used |
| • Contribution | • Description | |

Example:

Academic Projects

Project Title: Different Communication Skills

Organization: True Blue Solutions

Platform used: Articulate

Contribution: Content writing and graphic visualization

Description: Development of storyboards for corporate induction & training programs

Step 6: List Your Strengths

This is where you list all your major strengths. This section should be in the form of a bulleted list.

Example:**Strengths**

- Excellent oral, written and presentation skills
- Action-oriented and result-focused
- Great time management skills

Step 7: List Your Extracurricular Activities

It is very important to show that you have diverse interests and that your life consists of more than academics. Including your extracurricular activities can give you an added edge over other candidates who have similar academic scores and project experiences. This section should be in the form of a bulleted list.

Example:**Extracurricular Activities**

- Member of the Debate Club
- Played tennis at a national level
- Won first prize in the All India Camel Contest, 2010

Step 8: Write Your Personal Details

The last section of your résumé must include the following personal information:

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------------------|
| • Date of birth | • Gender & marital status |
| • Nationality | • Languages known |

Example:**Personal Details**

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| • Date of birth: | 25 th May, 1981 |
| • Gender & marital status: | Female, Single |
| • Nationality: | Indian |
| • Languages known: | English, Hindi, Tamil, French |

Tips

- Keep your resume file name short, simple and informational.
- Make sure the resume is neat and free from typing errors.
- Always create your resume on plain white paper.

8.4.3 Interview FAQs

Take a look at some of the most frequently asked interview questions, and some helpful tips on how to answer them.

Q1. Can you tell me a little about yourself?

Tips to answer:

- Don't provide your full employment or personal history.
- Offer 2-3 specific experiences that you feel are most valuable and relevant.
- Conclude with how those experiences have made you perfect for this specific role.

Q2. How did you hear about the position?

Tips to answer:

- Tell the interviewer how you heard about the job – whether it was through a friend (name the friend), event or article (name them) or a job portal (say which one).
- Explain what excites you about the position and what in particular caught your eye about this role.

Q3. What do you know about the company?

Tips to answer:

- Don't recite the company's About Us page.
- Show that you understand and care about the company's goals.
- Explain why you believe in the company's mission and values.

Q4. Why do you want this job?

Tips to answer:

- Show that you are passionate about the job.
- Identify why the role is a great fit for you.
- Explain why you love the company.

Q5. Why should we hire you?

Tips to answer:

- Prove through your words that you can not only do the work, but can definitely deliver excellent results.
- Explain why you would be a great fit with the team and work culture.
- Explain why you should be chosen over any other candidate.

Q6. What are your greatest professional strengths?

Tips to answer:

- Be honest – share some of your real strengths, rather than give answers that you think sound good.
- Offer examples of specific strengths that are relevant to the position you are applying for.
- Provide examples of how you've demonstrated these strengths.

Q7. What do you consider to be your weaknesses?**Tips to answer:**

- The purpose of this question is to gauge your self-awareness and honesty.
- Give an example of a trait that you struggle with, but that you're working on to improve.

Q8. What are your salary requirements?**Tips to answer:**

- Do your research beforehand and find out the typical salary range for the job you are applying for.
- Figure out where you lie on the pay scale based on your experience, education, and skills.
- Be flexible. Tell the interviewer that you know your skills are valuable, but that you want the job and are willing to negotiate.

Q9. What do you like to do outside of work?**Tips to answer:**

- The purpose of this question is to see if you will fit in with the company culture.
- Be honest – open up and share activities and hobbies that interest and excite you.

Q10. If you were an animal, which one would you want to be?**Tips to answer:**

- The purpose of this question is to see if you are able to think on your feet.
- There's no wrong answer – but to make a great impression try to bring out your strengths or personality traits through your answer.

Q11: What do you think we could do better or differently?**Tips to answer:**

- The purpose of this question is to see if you have done your research on the company, and to test whether you can think critically and come up with new ideas.
- Suggest new ideas. Show how your interests and expertise would help you execute these ideas.

Q12: Do you have any questions for us?**Tips to answer:**

- Do not ask questions to which the answers can be easily found on the company website or through a quick online search.
- Ask intelligent questions that show your ability to think critically.

Tips

- Be honest and confident while answering.
- Use examples of your past experiences wherever possible to make your answers more impactful.

8.4.4 Work Readiness – Terms & Terminologies

Every employee should be well versed in the following terms:

- **Annual leave:** Paid vacation leave given by employers to employees.
- **Background Check:** A method used by employers to verify the accuracy of the information provided by potential candidates.
- **Benefits:** A part of an employee's compensation package.
- **Breaks:** Short periods of rest taken by employees during working hours.
- **Compensation Package:** The combination of salary and benefits that an employer provides to his/her employees.
- **Compensatory Time (Comp Time):** Time off in lieu of pay.
- **Contract Employee:** An employee who works for one organization that sells said employee's service to another company, either on a project or time basis.
- **Contract of Employment:** When an employee is offered work in exchange for wages or salary, and accepts the offer made by the employer, a contract of employment exists.
- **Corporate Culture:** The beliefs and values shared by all the members of a company, and imparted from one generation of employees to another.
- **Counter Offer/Counter Proposal:** A negotiation technique used by potential candidates to increase the amount of salary offered by a company.
- **Cover Letter:** A letter that accompanies a candidate's resume. It emphasizes the important points in the candidate's resume and provides real examples that prove the candidate's ability to perform the expected job role.
- **Curriculum Vitae (CV)/Resume:** A summary of a candidate's achievements, educational work experience, skills and strengths.
- **Declining Letter:** A letter sent by an employee to an employer, turning down the job offer employer to the employee.
- **Deductions:** Amounts subtracted from an employee's pay and listed on the employee's pay slip.
- **Discrimination:** The act of treating one person not as favourably as another person.
- **Employee:** A person who works for another person in exchange for payment.
- **Employee Training:** A workshop or in-house training that an employee is asked to attend by his or her superior, for the benefit of the employer.
- **Employment Gaps:** Periods of unemployed time between jobs.
- **Fixed-Term Contract:** A contract of employment which gets terminated on an agreed-upon date.
- **Follow-Up:** The act of contacting a potential employer after a candidate has submitted his or her resume.
- **Freelancer/Consultant/Independent Contractor:** A person who works for him or herself for temporary jobs and projects with different employers.
- **Holiday:** Paid time-off from work.
- **Hourly Rate:** The amount of salary or wages paid for 60 minutes of work.

- **Internship:** A job opportunity offered by an employer to a potential employee, called an intern, at the employer's company for a fixed, limited time period.
- **Interview:** A conversation between a potential employee and a representative of an employer to determine if the potential employee should be hired.
- **Job Application:** A form which asks for a candidate's information like the candidate's name, details and work experience. The purpose of a candidate submitting a job application, is to show that candidate's interest in working for a particular company.
- **Job Offer:** An offer of employment made by an employer to a potential employee.
- **Job Search Agent:** A program that enables candidates to search for employment opportunities by selecting criteria listed in the program, for job vacancies. background, made by the and pitches intern, to work employer, in address, contact
- **Lay Off:** A lay off occurs when an employee is temporarily let go from his or her job, due to the employer not having any work for that employee.
- **Leave:** Formal permission given to an employee, by his or her employer, to take a leave of absence from work.
- **Letter of Acceptance:** A letter given by an employer to an employee, confirming the offer of employment made by the employer, as well as the conditions of the offer.
- **Letter of Agreement:** A letter that outlines the terms of employment.
- **Letter of Recommendation:** A letter written for the purpose of validating the work skills of a person.
- **Maternity Leave:** Leave taken from work by women who are pregnant, or who have just given birth.
- **Mentor:** A person who is employed at a higher level than you, who offers you advice and guides you in your career.
- **Minimum wage:** The minimum wage amount paid on an hourly basis.
- **Notice:** An announcement made by an employee or an employer, stating that the employment contract will end on a particular date.
- **Offer of Employment:** An offer made by an employer to a prospective employee that contains important information pertaining to the job being offered, like the starting date, salary, working conditions etc.
- **Open-Ended Contract:** A contract of employment that continues till the employer or terminates it.
- **Overqualified:** A person who is not suited for a particular job because he or she has too many years of work experience, or a level of education that is much higher than required for the job, or is currently or was previously too highly paid.
- **Part-Time Worker:** An employee who works for fewer hours than the standard number of hours normally worked.
- **Paternity Leave:** Leave granted to a man who has recently become a father.
- **Recruiters/Head-hunters/Executive Search Firms:** Professionals who are paid by employers to search for people to fill particular positions.
- **Resigning/Resignations:** When an employee formally informs his or her employer that he or she is quitting his or her job.

- **Self-Employed:** A person who has his or her own business and does not work in the capacity of an employee.
- **Time Sheet:** A form that is submitted to an employer, by an employee, that contains the number of hours worked every day by the employee.

UNIT 8.5: Understanding Entrepreneurship

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Discuss the concept of entrepreneurship
2. Discuss the importance of entrepreneurship
3. Describe the characteristics of an entrepreneur
4. Describe the different types of enterprises
5. List the qualities of an effective leader
6. Discuss the benefits of effective leadership
7. List the traits of an effective team
8. Discuss the importance of listening effectively
9. Discuss how to listen effectively
10. Discuss the importance of speaking effectively
11. Discuss how to speak effectively
12. Discuss how to solve problems
13. List important problem solving traits
14. Discuss ways to assess problem solving skills
15. Discuss the importance of negotiation
16. Discuss how to negotiate
17. Discuss how to identify new business opportunities
18. Discuss how to identify business opportunities within your business
19. Understand the meaning of entrepreneur
20. Describe the different types of entrepreneurs
21. List the characteristics of entrepreneurs
22. Recall entrepreneur success stories
23. Discuss the entrepreneurial process
24. Describe the entrepreneurship ecosystem
25. Discuss the government's role in the entrepreneurship ecosystem
26. Discuss the current entrepreneurship ecosystem in India
27. Understand the purpose of the Make in India campaign
28. Discuss the relationship between entrepreneurship and risk appetite
29. Discuss the relationship between entrepreneurship and resilience
30. Describe the characteristics of a resilient entrepreneur
31. Discuss how to deal with failure

8.5.1 Concept Introduction

Anyone who is determined to start a business, no matter what the risk, is an entrepreneur. Entrepreneurs run their own start-up, take responsibility for the financial risks and use creativity, innovation and vast reserves of self-motivation to achieve success. They dream big and are determined to do whatever it takes to turn their idea into a viable offering. The aim of an entrepreneur is to create an enterprise. The process of creating this enterprise is known as entrepreneurship.

8.5.1.1 Importance of Entrepreneurship

Entrepreneurship is very important for the following reasons:

1. It results in the creation of new organizations
2. It brings creativity into the marketplace
3. It leads to improved standards of living
4. It helps develop the economy of a country

8.5.1.2 Characteristics of Entrepreneurs

All successful entrepreneurs have certain characteristics in common.

They are all:

- Extremely passionate about their work
- Confident in themselves
- Disciplined and dedicated
- Motivated and driven
- Highly creative
- Visionaries
- Open-minded
- Decisive

Entrepreneurs also have a tendency to:

- Have a high-risk tolerance
- Thoroughly plan everything
- Manage their money wisely
- Make their customers their priority
- Understand their offering and their market in detail
- Ask for advice from experts when required
- Know when to cut their losses

8.5.1.3 Examples of Famous Entrepreneurs

Some famous entrepreneurs are:

- Bill Gates (Founder of Microsoft)
- Steve Jobs (Co-founder of Apple)
- Mark Zuckerberg (Founder of Facebook)
- Pierre Omidyar (Founder of eBay)

8.5.1.4 Types of Enterprises

As an entrepreneur in India, you can own and run any of the following types of enterprises:

Sole Proprietorship

In a sole proprietorship, a single individual owns, manages and controls the enterprise. This type of business is the easiest to form with respect to legal formalities. The business and the owner have no separate legal existence. All profit belongs to the proprietor, as do all the losses the liability of the entrepreneur is unlimited.

Partnership

A partnership firm is formed by two or more people. The owners of the enterprise are called partners. A partnership deed must be signed by all the partners. The firm and its partners have no separate legal existence. The profits are shared by the partners. With respect to losses, the liability of the partners is unlimited. A firm has a limited life span and must be dissolved when any one of the partners dies, retires, claims bankruptcy or goes insane.

Limited Liability Partnership (LLP)

In a Limited Liability Partnership or LLP, the partners of the firm enjoy perpetual existence as well as the advantage of limited liability. Each partner's liability is limited to their agreed contribution to the LLP. The partnership and its partners have a separate legal existence.

Tips



- Learn from others' failures.
- Be certain that this is what you want.
- Search for a problem to solve, rather than look for a problem to attach to your idea.

8.5.2 Leadership & Teamwork: Leadership and Leaders

Leadership means setting an example for others to follow. Setting a good example means not asking someone to do something that you wouldn't willingly want to do yourself. Leadership is about figuring out what to do in order to win as a team, and as a company.

Leaders believe in doing the right things. They also believe in helping others to do the right things. An effective leader is someone who:

- Creates an inspiring vision of the future.
- Motivates and inspires his team to pursue that vision.

8.5.2.1 Leadership Qualities That All Entrepreneurs Need

Building a successful enterprise is only possible if the entrepreneur in charge possesses excellent leadership qualities. Some critical leadership skills that every entrepreneur must have are:

1. **Pragmatism:** This means having the ability to highlight all obstacles and challenges, in order to resolve issues and reduce risks.
2. **Humility:** This means admitting to mistakes often and early, and being quick to take responsibility for your actions. Mistakes should be viewed as challenges to overcome, not opportunities to point blame.
3. **Flexibility:** It is critical for a good leader to be very flexible and quickly adapt to change. It is equally critical to know when to adapt and when not to.
4. **Authenticity:** This means showing both, your strengths and your weaknesses. It means being human and showing others that you are human.
5. **Reinvention:** This means refreshing or changing your leadership style when necessary. To do this, it's important to learn where your leadership gaps lie and find out what resources are required to close them.
6. **Awareness:** This means taking the time to recognize how others view you. It means understanding how your presence affects those around you.

8.5.2.2 Benefits of Effective Leadership

Effective leadership results in numerous benefits. Great leadership leads to the leader successfully:

- Gaining the loyalty and commitment of the team members
- Motivating the team to work towards achieving the company's goals and objectives
- Building morale and instilling confidence in the team members
- Fostering mutual understanding and team-spirit among team members
- Convincing team members about the need to change when a situation requires adaptability

8.5.2.3 Teamwork and Teams

Teamwork occurs when the people in a workplace combine their individual skills to pursue a common goal. Effective teams are made up of individuals who work together to achieve this common goal. A great team is one who holds themselves accountable for the end result.

8.5.2.4 Importance of Teamwork in Entrepreneurial Success

For an entrepreneurial leader, building an effective team is critical to the success of a venture. An entrepreneur must ensure that the team he builds possesses certain crucial qualities, traits and characteristics. An effective team is one which has:

1. **Unity of purpose:** All the team members should clearly understand and be equally committed to the purpose, vision and goals of the team.
2. **Great communication skills:** Team members should have the ability to express their concerns, ask questions and use diagrams, and charts to convey complex information.
3. **The ability to collaborate:** Every member should feel entitled to provide regular feedback on new ideas.
4. **Initiative:** The team should consist of proactive individuals. The members should have the enthusiasm to come up with new ideas, improve existing ideas, and conduct their own research.
5. **Visionary members:** The team should have the ability to anticipate problems and act on these potential problems before they turn into real problems.
6. **Great adaptability skills:** The team must believe that change is a positive force. Change should be seen as the chance to improve and try new things.
7. **Excellent organizational skills:** The team should have the ability to develop standard work processes, balance responsibilities, properly plan projects, and set in place methods to measure progress and ROI.

Tips



- Don't get too attached to your original idea. Allow it to evolve and change.
- Be aware of your weaknesses and build a team that will complement your shortfalls.
- Hiring the right people is not enough. You need to promote or incentivize your most talented people to keep them motivated.
- Earn your team's respect.

8.5.3 Communication Skills

Listening is the ability to correctly receive and understand messages during the process of communication. Listening is critical for effective communication. Without effective listening skills, messages can easily be misunderstood. This results in a communication breakdown and can lead to the sender and the receiver of the message becoming frustrated or irritated.

It's very important to note that listening is not the same as hearing. Hearing just refers to sounds that you hear. Listening is a whole lot more than that. To listen, one requires focus. It means not only paying attention to the story, but also focusing on how the story is relayed, the way language and voice is used, and even how the speaker uses their body language. The ability to listen depends on how effectively one can perceive and understand both, verbal and non-verbal cues.

8.5.3.1 How to Listen Effectively?

To listen effectively you should:

- Stop talking
- Stop interrupting
- Focus completely on what is being said
- Nod and use encouraging words and gestures
- Be open-minded
- Think about the speaker's perspective
- Be very, very patient
- Pay attention to the tone that is being used
- Pay attention to the speaker's gestures, facial expressions and eye movements
- Not try and rush the person
- Not let the speaker's mannerisms or habits irritate or distract you

8.5.3.2 The Importance of Speaking Effectively

How successfully a message gets conveyed depends entirely on how effectively you are able to get it through. An effective speaker is one who enunciates properly, pronounces words correctly, chooses the right words and speaks at a pace that is easily understandable. Besides this, the words spoken out loud need to match the gestures, tone and body language used.

What you say, and the tone in which you say it, results in numerous perceptions being formed. A person who speaks hesitantly may be perceived as having low self-esteem or lacking in knowledge of the discussed topic. Those with a quiet voice may very well be labelled as shy. And those who speak in commanding tones with high levels of clarity, are usually considered to be extremely confident. This makes speaking a very critical communication skill.

8.5.3.3 How to Speak Effectively?

To speak effectively you should:

- Incorporate body language in your speech like eye contact, smiling, nodding, gesturing etc.
- Build a draft of your speech before actually making your speech.
- Ensure that all your emotions and feelings are under control.
- Pronounce your words distinctly with the correct pitch and intensity. Your speech should be crystal clear at all times. Use a pleasant and natural tone when speaking. Your audience should not feel like you are putting on an accent or being unnatural in any way.
- Use precise and specific words to drive your message home. Ambiguity should be avoided at all costs.
- Ensure that your speech has a logical flow.
- Be brief. Don't add any unnecessary information.
- Make a conscious effort to avoid irritating mannerisms like fidgeting, twitching etc.

- Choose your words carefully and use simple words that the majority of the audience will have no difficulty understanding.
- Use visual aids like slides or a whiteboard.
- Speak slowly so that your audience can easily understand what you're saying. However, be careful not to speak too slowly because this can come across as stiff, unprepared or even condescending.
- Remember to pause at the right moments.

Tips

- If you're finding it difficult to focus on what someone is saying, try repeating their words in your head.
- Always maintain eye contact with the person that you are communicating with, when speaking as well as listening. This conveys and also encourages interest in the conversation.

8.5.4 Problem Solving & Negotiation Skills

As per The Concise Oxford Dictionary (1995), a problem is, "A doubtful or difficult matter requiring a solution"

All problems contain two elements:

1. Goals
2. Obstacles

The aim of problem solving is to recognize the obstacles and remove them in order to achieve the goals.

8.5.4.1 How to Solve Problems?

Solving a problem requires a level of rational thinking. Here are some logical steps to follow when faced with an issue:

- **Step 1:** Identify the problem
- **Step 2:** Study the problem in detail
- **Step 3:** List all possible solutions
- **Step 4:** Select the best solution
- **Step 5:** Implement the chosen solution
- **Step 6:** Check that the problem has really been solved

8.5.4.2 Important Traits for Problem Solving

Highly developed problem-solving skills are critical for both, business owners and their employees. The following personality traits play a big role in how effectively problems are solved:

- Being open minded
- Asking the right questions
- Being proactive
- Not panicking
- Having a positive attitude
- Focusing on the right problem

8.5.4.3 How to Assess for Problem Solving Skills?

As an entrepreneur, it would be a good idea to assess the level of problem solving skills of potential candidates before hiring them. Some ways to assess this skill are through:

1. **Application forms:** Ask for proof of the candidate's problem solving skills in the application form.
2. **Psychometric tests:** Give potential candidates logical reasoning and critical thinking tests and see how they fare.
3. **Interviews:** Create hypothetical problematic situations or raise ethical questions and see how the candidates respond.
4. **Technical questions:** Give candidates examples of real life problems and evaluate their thought process.

8.5.4.4 What is Negotiation?

Negotiation is a method used to settle differences. The aim of negotiation is to resolve differences through a compromise or agreement while avoiding disputes. Without negotiation, conflicts are likely to lead to resentment between people. Good negotiation skills help satisfy both parties and go a long way towards developing strong relationships.

Why Negotiate?

Starting a business requires many, many negotiations. Some negotiations are small while others are critical enough to make or break a start-up. Negotiation also plays a big role inside the workplace. As an entrepreneur, you need to know not only how to negotiate yourself, but also how to train employees in the art of negotiation.

How to Negotiate?

Take a look at some steps to help you negotiate:

- **Step 1:** Pre-Negotiation Preparation: Agree on where to meet to discuss the problem, decide who all will be present and set a time limit for the discussion.
- **Step 2:** Discuss the problem: This involves asking questions, listening to the other side, putting your views forward and clarifying doubts.
- **Step 3:** Clarify the Objective: Ensure that both parties want to solve the same problem and reach the same goal.
- **Step 4:** Aim for a Win-Win Outcome: Try your best to be open minded when negotiating. Compromise and offer substitute solutions to arrive at an outcome where both win.
- **Step 5:** Clearly Define the Agreement: When an agreement has been reached, the details of the agreement should be crystal clear to both sides, with no scope for misunderstandings.
- **Step 6:** Implement the Agreed Upon Solution: Agree on a course of action to set the solution in motion.

Tips

- Know exactly what you want before you work towards getting it
- Give more importance to listening and thinking, than speaking
- Focus on building a relationship rather than winning
- Remember that your people skills will affect the outcome
- Know when to walk away – sometimes reaching an agreement may not be possible

8.5.5 Business Opportunities Identification

"The entrepreneur always searches for change, responds to it and exploits it as an opportunity."

Peter Drucker

The ability to find good business opportunities is an important characteristic of an entrepreneur.

What is an Opportunity?

The word opportunity suggests a good chance or a favourable situation to do something offered by circumstances.

A business opportunity is typically a good/favourable change that can be used to run a business in a given environment, at a given point of time.

Common Questions Faced by Entrepreneurs

A critical question that all entrepreneurs face is how to go about finding the business opportunity that is right for them.

Some common questions that entrepreneurs constantly think about are:

- Should the new enterprise introduce a new product or service based on an unmet need?
- Should the new enterprise select an existing product or service from one market and offer it in another where it may not be available?
- Should the enterprise be based on a tried and tested formula that has worked elsewhere?

It is therefore extremely important that entrepreneurs must learn how to identify new and existing business opportunities and evaluate their chances of success.

When is an Idea an Opportunity?

An idea is an opportunity when:

- It creates or adds value to a customer
- It solves a significant problem, removes a pain point or meets a demand
- Has a robust market and profit margin
- Is a good fit with the founder and management team at the right time and place

Factors to Consider When Looking for Opportunities

Consider the following when looking for business opportunities:

- Economic trends
- Changes in funding
- Changing relationships between vendors, partners and suppliers
- Market trends
- Changes in political support
- Shift in target audience

Ways to Identify New Business Opportunities

- **Identify Market Inefficiencies:** When looking at a market, consider what inefficiencies are present in the market. Think about ways to correct these inefficiencies.
- **Remove Key Hassles:** Rather than create a new product or service, you can innovatively improve a product, service or process.
- **Create Something New:** Think about how you can create a new experience for customers, based on existing business models.
- **Pick a Growing Sector/Industry:** Research and find out which sectors or industries are growing and think about what opportunities you can tap in the same.
- **Think About Product Differentiation:** If you already have a product in mind, think about ways to set it apart from the existing ones.

Ways to Identify Business Opportunities within Your Business

1. SWOT Analysis

An excellent way to identify opportunities inside your business is by creating a SWOT analysis. The acronym SWOT stands for strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats. SWOT analysis framework:

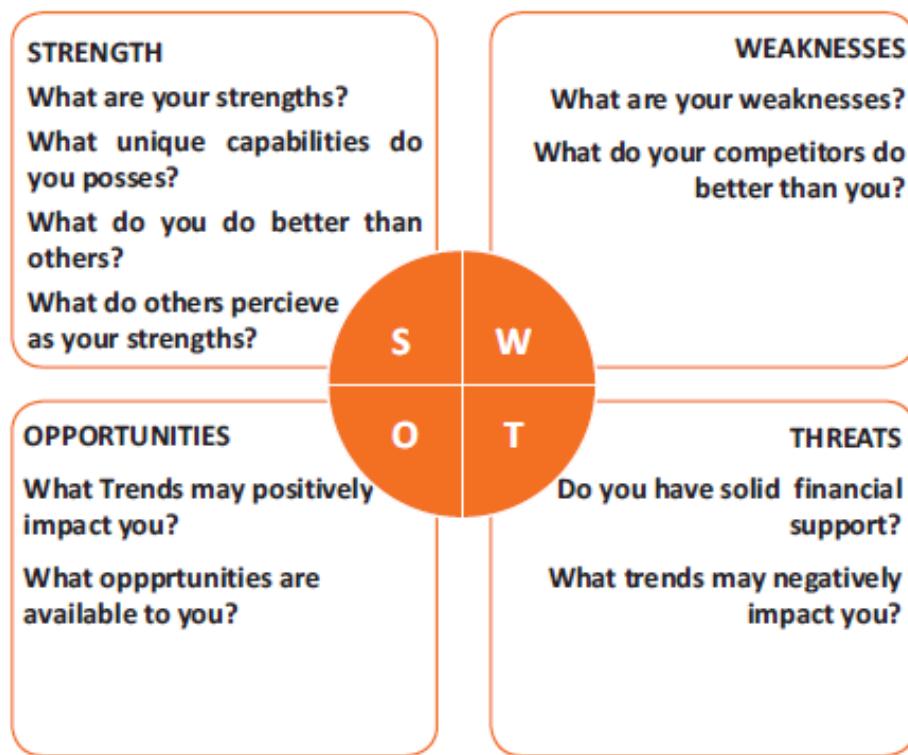


Fig. 8.5.1: SWOT Analysis

Consider the following when looking for business opportunities:

By looking at yourself and your competitors using the SWOT framework, you can uncover opportunities that you can exploit, as well as manage and eliminate threats that could derail your success.

2. Establishing Your USP

Establish your USP in such a way that positions you differently from your competitors. Identify the uniqueness about your product that will motivate customers to buy from you and then promote that reason.

Opportunity Analysis

Once you have identified an opportunity, you need to analyse it. To analyse an opportunity, you must:

- Focus on the idea
- Focus on the market of the idea
- Talk to industry leaders in the same space as the idea
- Talk to players in the same space as the idea

Tips

- Remember, opportunities are situational.
- Look for a proven track record.
- Avoid the latest craze.
- Love your idea.

8.5.6 Entrepreneurship Support Eco-System

An entrepreneur is a person who:

- Does not work for an employee
- Runs a small enterprise
- Assumes all the risks and rewards of the enterprise, idea, good or service

Types of Entrepreneurs

There are four main types of entrepreneurs:

1. **The Traditional Entrepreneur:** This type of entrepreneur usually has some kind of skill – they can be a carpenter, mechanic, cook etc. They have businesses that have been around for numerous years like restaurants, shops and carpenters. Typically, they gain plenty of experience in a particular industry before they begin their own business in a similar field.
2. **The Growth Potential Entrepreneur:** The desire of this type of entrepreneur is to start an enterprise that will grow, win many customers and make lots of money. Their ultimate aim is to eventually sell their enterprise for a nice profit. Such entrepreneurs usually have a science or technical background.
3. **The Project-Oriented Entrepreneur:** This type of entrepreneur generally has a background in the Arts or psychology. Their enterprises tend to be focus on something that they are very passionate about.
4. **The Lifestyle Entrepreneur:** This type of entrepreneur has usually worked as a teacher or a secretary. They are more interested in selling something that people will enjoy, rather than making lots of money.

Characteristics of an Entrepreneur

Successful entrepreneurs have the following characteristics:

- They are highly motivated
- They are creative and persuasive
- They are mentally prepared to handle each and every task
- They have excellent business skills – they know how to evaluate their cash flow, sales and revenue

- They are willing to take great risks
- They are very proactive – this means they are willing to do the work themselves, rather than wait for someone else to do it
- They have a vision – they are able to see the big picture
- They are flexible and open-minded
- They are good at making decisions

8.5.6.1 Entrepreneur Success Stories

Dhiru Bhai Ambani

Dhirubhai Ambani began his entrepreneurial career by selling “bhajias” to pilgrims in Mount Girnar on weekends. At 16, he moved to Yemen where he worked as a gas-station attendant, and as a clerk in an oil company. He returned to India with Rs. 50,000 and started a textile trading company. Reliance went on to become the first Indian company to raise money in global markets and the first Indian company to feature in Forbes 500 list.

Dr. Karsanbhai Patel

Karsanbhai Patel made detergent powder in the backyard of his house. He sold his product door-to door and offered a money back guarantee with every pack that was sold. He charged Rs.3 per kg when the cheapest detergent at that time was Rs.13 per kg. Dr. Patel eventually started Nirma which became a whole new segment in the Indian domestic detergent market.

8.5.6.2 The Entrepreneurial Process

Let's take a look at the stages of the entrepreneurial process.

- **Stage 1:** Idea Generation. The entrepreneurial process begins with an idea that has been thought of by the entrepreneur. The idea is a problem that has the potential to be solved.
- **Stage 2:** Germination or Recognition. In this stage a possible solution to the identified problem is thought of.
- **Stage 3:** Preparation or Rationalization. The problem is studied further and research is done to find out how others have tried to solve the same problem.
- **Stage 4:** Incubation or Fantasizing. This stage involves creative thinking for the purpose of coming up with more ideas. Less thought is given to the problem areas.
- **Stage 5:** Feasibility Study: The next step is the creation of a feasibility study to determine if the idea will make a profit and if it should be seen through.
- **Stage 6:** Illumination or Realization. This is when all uncertain areas suddenly become clear. The entrepreneur feels confident that his idea has merit.
- **Stage 7:** Verification or Validation. In this final stage, the idea is verified to see if it works and if it is useful.

Take a look at the diagram below to get a better idea of this process.

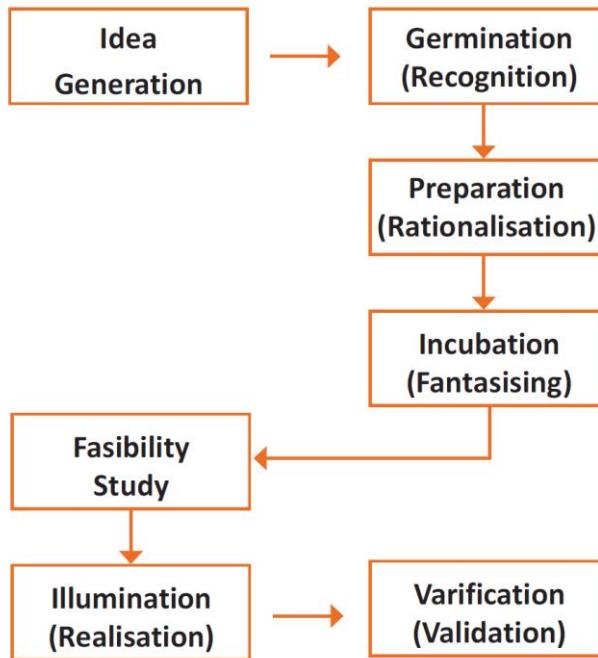


Fig. 8.5.2: Stages of the entrepreneurial process

8.5.6.3 What is an Entrepreneur?

The entrepreneurship support ecosystem signifies the collective and complete nature of entrepreneurship. New companies emerge and flourish not only because of the courageous, visionary entrepreneurs who launch them, but they thrive as they are set in an environment or 'ecosystem' made of private and public participants. These players nurture and sustain the new ventures, facilitating the entrepreneurs' efforts. An entrepreneurship ecosystem comprises of the following six domains:

1. **Favourable Culture:** This includes elements such as tolerance of risk and errors, valuable networking and positive social standing of the entrepreneur.
2. **Facilitating Policies & Leadership:** This includes regulatory framework incentives and existence of public research institutes.
3. **Financing Options:** Angel financing, venture capitalists and micro loans would be good examples of this.
4. **Human Capital:** This refers to trained and untrained labour, entrepreneurs and entrepreneurship training programmes, etc.
5. **Conducive Markets for Products & Services:** This refers to an existence or scope of existence of a market for the product/service.
6. **Institutional & Infrastructural Support:** This includes legal and financing advisers, telecommunications, digital and transportation infrastructure, and entrepreneurship networking programmes.

These domains indicate whether there is a strong entrepreneurship support ecosystem and what actions should the government put in place to further encourage this ecosystem.

The six domains and their various elements have been graphically depicted.

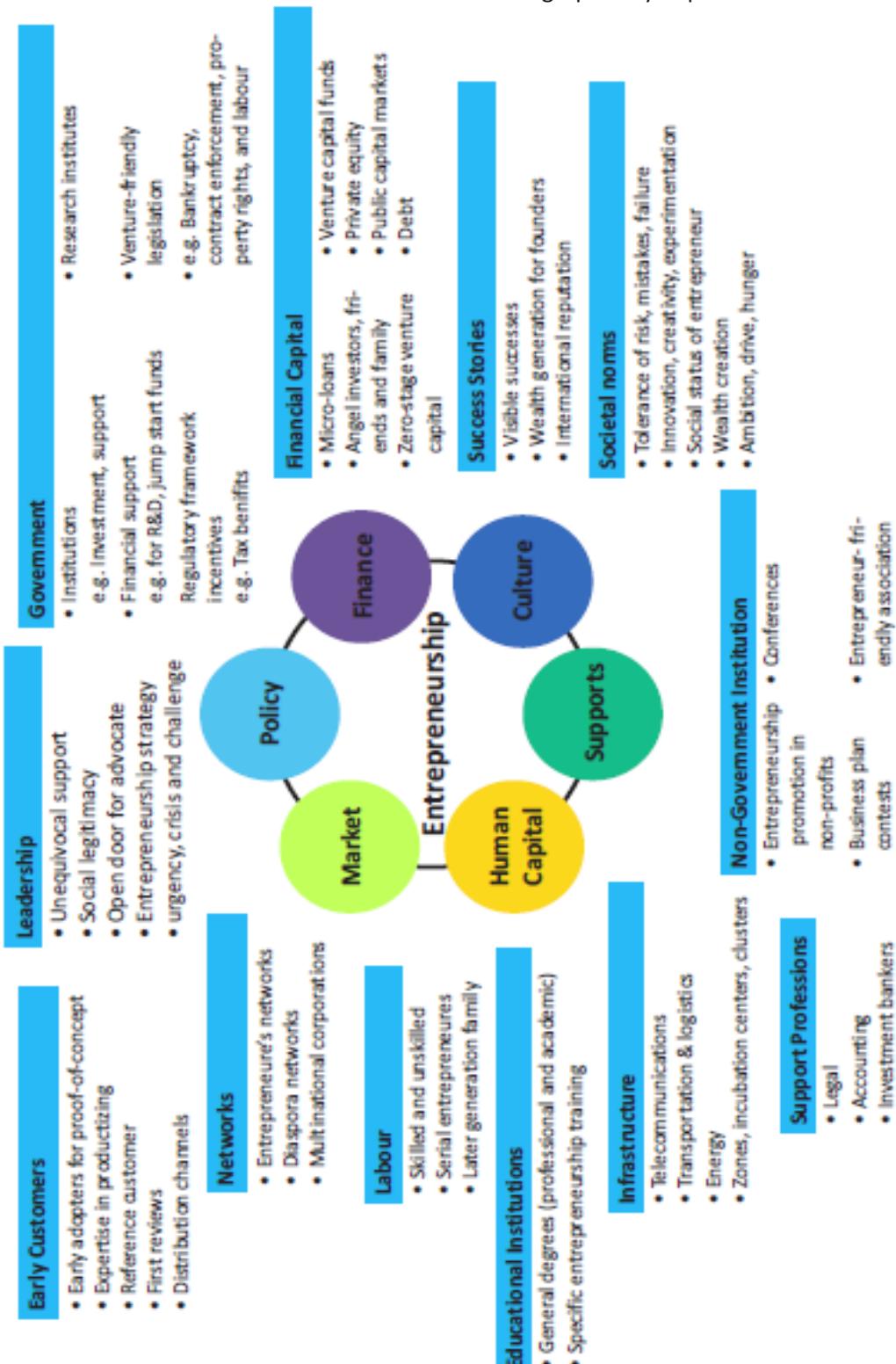


Fig. 8.5.3: Entrepreneurship at a Glance

Every entrepreneurship support ecosystem is unique and all the elements of the ecosystem are interdependent. Although every region's entrepreneurship ecosystem can be broadly described by the above features, each ecosystem is the result of the hundred elements interacting in highly complex and particular ways.

Entrepreneurship ecosystems eventually become (largely) self-sustaining. When the six domains are resilient enough, they are mutually beneficial. At this point, government involvement can and should be significantly minimized. Public leaders do not need to invest a lot to sustain the ecosystem. It is imperative that the entrepreneurship ecosystem incentives are formulated to be self-liquidating, hence focusing on sustainability of the environment.

8.5.6.4 Government's Role in the Entrepreneurship Ecosystem

Encouraging new ventures is a major focus for policymakers. Governments across the world are recognizing that new businesses flourish in distinctive types of supportive environments. Policymakers should study the scenario and take into account the following points whilst they formulate policies and regulations that enable successful entrepreneurship support ecosystems.

- Policymakers should avoid regulations that discourage new entrants and work towards building efficient methods for business startups. Policies and regulations which help existing, leading firms over entrepreneurial ventures, limit competition and obstruct growth/formation of new companies.
- Therefore, in place of developing policies that are intended to improve market failures, policymakers should interact with entrepreneurs and understand the challenges faced by them. The feedback is used to develop policies which encourage exploring ideas, developing new products and increase the rates of deal flow.
- Entrepreneurial supporters ideally need to create a database that enables identifying who the members in the ecosystem are and how they are connected. The ecosystem database are useful tools in developing engagement strategies.
- Disruptions are inevitable in economic as well as social life. However, it's important to note that economic disruption gives rise to entrepreneurial opportunities. Architects of the entrepreneurship ecosystems (entrepreneurs, mentors, policymakers and consumers,) should anticipate these dips, thus capitalizing on the opportunities they create.

8.5.6.5 Snapshot of the Entrepreneurship Ecosystem in India

Entrepreneurship has earned a newfound respect in India. Many Indians, with exposure to the world of business, who traditionally would have opted for a job, are setting up their own ventures. Many elements of the entrepreneurship ecosystem are beginning to come together. For example, increase in venture capitalists, government schemes and incubators, academia industry linkages, and emerging clusters and support to rural economy.

All these initiatives are effective but there is a need to scale up and enrich the ecosystem further in the following ways:

1. We need to review our attitude towards failures and accept them as learning experiences.
2. We must encourage the educated to become entrepreneurs and provide students in schools and colleges with entrepreneurship skills.
3. Universities, research labs and the government need to play the role of enablers in the entrepreneurship support ecosystem.
4. Policymakers need to focus on reducing the obstacles such as corruption, red tape and bureaucracy.
5. We need to improve our legal systems and court international venture capital firms and bring them to India.
6. We must devise policies and methods to reach the secondary and tertiary towns in India, where people do not have access to the same resources available in the cities.

Today, there is a huge opportunity in this country to introduce innovative solutions that are capable of scaling up, and collaborating within the ecosystem as well as enriching it.

8.5.6.6 Make in India Campaign

Every entrepreneur has certain needs. Some of their important needs are:

- To easily get loans
- To easily find investors
- To get tax exemptions
- To easily access resources and good infrastructure
- To enjoy a procedure that is free of hassles and is quick
- To be able to easily partner with other firms

The Make in India campaign, launched by Prime Minister Modi aims to satisfy all these needs of young, aspiring entrepreneurs. Its objective is to:

- Make investment easy
- Support new ideas
- Enhance skill development
- Safeguard the ideas of entrepreneurs
- Create state-of-the-art facilities for manufacturing goods

Tips

- Research the existing market, network with other entrepreneurs, venture capitalists, angel investors, and thoroughly review the policies in place to enable your entrepreneurship.
- Failure is a stepping stone and not the end of the road. Review yours and your peers' errors and correct them in your future venture.
- Be proactive in your ecosystem. Identify the key features of your ecosystem and enrich them to ensure self-sustainability of your entrepreneurship support ecosystem.

8.5.7 Risk Appetite & Resilience

Entrepreneurship and Risk

Entrepreneurs are inherently risk takers. They are path-makers not path-takers. Unlike a normal, cautious person, an entrepreneur would not think twice about quitting his job (his sole income) and taking a risk on himself and his idea.

An entrepreneur is aware that while pursuing his dreams, assumptions can be proven wrong and unforeseen events may arise. He knows that after dealing with numerous problems, success is still not guaranteed. Entrepreneurship is synonymous with the ability to take risks. This ability, called risk-appetite, is an entrepreneurial trait that is partly genetic and partly acquired.

What is Risk Appetite?

Risk appetite is defined as the extent to which a company is equipped to take risk, in order to achieve its objectives. Essentially, it refers to the balance, struck by the company, between possible profits and the hazards caused by changes in the environment (economic ecosystem, policies, etc.). Taking on more risk may lead to higher rewards but have a high probability of losses as well. However, being too conservative may go against the company as it can miss out on good opportunities to grow and reach their objectives.

The levels of risk appetite can be broadly categorized as “low”, “medium” and “high.” The company’s entrepreneur(s) need to assess all possible alternatives and choose the option most likely to succeed. Companies have varying levels of risk appetites for different objectives. The levels depend on:

- The type of industry
- Market pressures
- Company objectives

For example, a start-up with a revolutionary concept will have a very high risk appetite. The start-up can afford short term failures before it achieves longer term success. This type of appetite will not remain constant and will be adjusted to account for the present circumstances of the company.

Risk Appetite Statement

Companies have to define and articulate their risk appetite in sync with decisions made about their objectives and opportunities. The point of having a risk appetite statement is to have a framework that clearly states the acceptance and management of risk in business. It sets risk taking limits within the company. The risk appetite statement should convey the following:

- The nature of risks the business faces.
- Which risks the company is comfortable taking on and which risks are unacceptable.
- How much risk to accept in all the risk categories.
- The desired trade-off between risk and reward.
- Measures of risk and methods of examining and regulating risk exposures.

Entrepreneurship and Resilience

Entrepreneurs are characterized by a set of qualities known as resilience. These qualities play an especially large role in the early stages of developing an enterprise. Risk resilience is an extremely valuable characteristic as it is believed to protect entrepreneurs against the threat of challenges and changes in the business environment.

What is Entrepreneurial Resilience?

Resilience is used to describe individuals who have the ability to overcome setbacks related to their life and career aspirations. A resilient person is someone who is capable of easily and quickly recovering from setbacks. For the entrepreneur, resilience is a critical trait. Entrepreneurial resilience can be enhanced in the following ways:

- By developing a professional network of coaches and mentors
- By accepting that change is a part of life
- By viewing obstacles as something that can be overcome

Characteristics of a Resilient Entrepreneur

The characteristics required to make an entrepreneur resilient enough to go the whole way in their business enterprise are:

- A strong internal sense of control
- Ability to diversify and expand
- Strong social connections
- Survivor attitude
- Skill to learn from setbacks
- Cash-flow conscious habits
- Ability to look at the bigger picture
- Attention to detail

Tips



- Cultivate a great network of clients, suppliers, peers, friends and family. This will not only help you promote your business, but will also help you learn, identify new opportunities and stay tuned to changes in the market.
- Don't dwell on setbacks. Focus on what you need to do next to get moving again.
- While you should try, and curtail expenses, ensure that it is not at the cost of your growth.

8.5.8 Success & Failures

Understanding Successes and Failures in Entrepreneurship

Shyam is a famous entrepreneur, known for his success story. But what most people don't know, is that Shyam failed numerous times before his enterprise became a success. Read his interview to get an idea of what entrepreneurship is really about, straight from an entrepreneur who has both, failed and succeeded.

Interviewer: Shyam, I have heard that entrepreneurs are great risk-takers who are never afraid of failing. Is this true?

Shyam: Ha ha, no of course it's not true! Most people believe that entrepreneurs need to be fearlessly enthusiastic. But the truth is, fear is a very normal and valid human reaction, especially when you are planning to start your own business! In fact, my biggest fear was the fear of failing. The reality is, entrepreneurs fail as much as they succeed. The trick is to not allow the fear of failing to stop you from going ahead with your plans. Remember, failures are lessons for future success!

Interviewer: What, according to you, is the reason that entrepreneurs fail?

Shyam: Well, there is no one single reason why entrepreneurs fail. An entrepreneur can fail due to numerous reasons. You could fail because you have allowed your fear of failure to defeat you. You could fail because you are unwilling to delegate (distribute) work. As the saying goes, "You can do anything, but not everything!" You could fail because you gave up too easily – maybe you were not persistent enough. You could fail because you were focusing your energy on small, insignificant tasks and ignoring the tasks that were most important. Other reasons for failing are partnering with the wrong people, not being able to sell your product to the right customers at the right time at the right price... and many more reasons!

Interviewer: As an entrepreneur, how do you feel failure should be looked at?

Shyam: I believe we should all look at failure as an asset, rather than as something negative. The way I see it, if you have an idea, you should try to make it work, even if there is a chance that you will fail. That's because not trying is failure right there, anyway! And failure is not the worst thing that can happen. I think having regrets because of not trying, and wondering 'what if' is far worse than trying and actually failing.

Interviewer: How did you feel when you failed for the first time?

Shyam: I was completely heartbroken! It was a very painful experience. But the good news is, you do recover from the failure. And with every subsequent failure, the recovery process gets a lot easier. That's because you start to see each failure more as a lesson that will eventually help you succeed, rather than as an obstacle that you cannot overcome. You will start to realize that failure has many benefits.

Interviewer: Can you tell us about some of the benefits of failing?

Shyam: One of the benefits that I have experienced personally from failing is that the failure made me see things in a new light. It gave me answers that I didn't have before. Failure can make you a lot stronger. It also helps keep your ego in control.

Interviewer: What advice would you give entrepreneurs who are about to start their own enterprises?

Shyam: I would tell them to do their research and ensure that their product is something that is actually wanted by customers. I'd tell them to pick their partners and employees very wisely and cautiously. I'd tell them that it's very important to be aggressive – push and market your product as aggressively as possible. I would warn them that starting an enterprise is very expensive and that they should be prepared for a situation where they run out of money. I would tell them to create long term goals and put a plan in action to achieve that goal. I would tell them to build a product that is truly unique. Be very careful and ensure that you are not copying another start-up. Lastly, I'd tell them that it's very important that they find the right investors.

Interviewer: That's some really helpful advice, Shyam! I'm sure this will help all entrepreneurs to be more prepared before they begin their journey! Thank you for all your insight!

Tips



- Remember that nothing is impossible.
- Identify your mission and your purpose before you start.
- Plan your next steps – don't make decisions hastily.

UNIT 8.6: Preparing to be an Entrepreneur

Unit Objectives



At the end of this unit, you will be able to:

1. Discuss how market research is carried out
2. Describe the 4 Ps of marketing
3. Discuss the importance of idea generation
4. Recall basic business terminology
5. Discuss the need for CRM
6. Discuss the benefits of CRM
7. Discuss the need for networking
8. Discuss the benefits of networking
9. Discuss the importance of setting goals
10. Differentiate between short-term, medium-term and long-term goals
11. Discuss how to write a business plan
12. Explain the financial planning process
13. Discuss ways to manage your risk
14. Describe the procedure and formalities for applying for bank finance
15. Discuss how to manage your own enterprise
16. List important questions that every entrepreneur should ask before starting an enterprise

8.6.1 Market Study/The 4 Ps of Marketing/Importance of an IDEA

Understanding Market Research

Market research is the process of gathering, analysing and interpreting market information on a product or service that is being sold in that market. It also includes information on:

- Past, present and prospective customers
- Customer characteristics and spending habits
- The location and needs of the target market
- The overall industry
- Relevant competitors

Market research involves two types of data:

- **Primary information.** This is research collected by yourself or by someone hired by you.
- **Secondary information.** This is research that already exists and is out there for you to find and use.

Primary research

Primary research can be of two types:

- **Exploratory:** This is open-ended and usually involves detailed, unstructured interviews.
- **Specific:** This is precise and involves structured, formal interviews. Conducting specific

Secondary research

Secondary research uses outside information. Some common secondary sources are:

- **Public sources:** These are usually free and have a lot of good information. Examples are government departments, business departments of public libraries etc.
- **Commercial sources:** These offer valuable information but usually require a fee to be paid. Examples are research and trade associations, banks and other financial institutions etc.
- **Educational institutions:** These offer a wealth of information. Examples are colleges, universities, technical institutes etc.

8.6.1.1 The 4 Ps of Marketing

The 4 Ps of marketing are Product, Price, Promotion and Place.

Let's look at each of these 4 Ps in detail.

Product

A product can be tangible, like a good or intangible, like a service.

Whatever your product is, it is critical that you have a clear understanding of what you are offering, and what its unique characteristics are, before you begin with the marketing process.

Some questions to ask yourself are:

- What need does the customer have for the product/service?
- What needs does it satisfy?
- Are there any more features that can be added?
- Does it have any expensive and unnecessary features?
- How will customers use it?
- What should it be called?
- How is it different from similar products?
- How much will it cost to produce?
- Can it be sold at a profit?

Price

Once all the elements of Product have been established, the Price factor needs to be considered. The Price of a Product will depend on several factors such as profit margins, supply, demand and the marketing strategy.

Some typical questions to ask yourself include:

- What is the value of the product/service to customers?
- Do local products/services have established price points?
- Is the customer price sensitive?
- Should discounts be offered?
- How is your price compared to that of your competitors?

Promotion

Once you are certain about your Product and your Price, the next step is to look at ways to promote it. Some key elements of promotion are advertising, public relations, social media marketing, email marketing, search engine marketing, video marketing and more.

Some questions to ask yourself are:

- Where should you promote your product or service?
- What is the best medium to use to reach your target audience
- When would be the best time to promote your product?
- How are your competitors promoting their products?

Place

According to most marketers, the basis of marketing is about offering the right product, at the right price, at the right place, at the right time. For this reason, selecting the best possible location is critical for converting prospective clients into actual clients.

Some questions to ask yourself are:

- Will your product or service be looked for in a physical store, online or both?
- What should you do to access the most appropriate distribution channels?
- Will you require a sales force?
- Where are your competitors offering their products or services?
- Should you follow in your competitors' footsteps?
- Should you do something different from your competitors?

Importance of an IDEA

Ideas are the foundation of progress. An idea can be small or ground-breaking, easy to accomplish or extremely complicated to implement. Whatever the case, the fact that it is an idea gives it merit. Without ideas, nothing is possible. Most people are afraid to speak out their ideas, out for fear of being ridiculed. However, if you are an entrepreneur and want to remain competitive and innovative, you need to bring your ideas out into the light.

Some ways to do this are by:

- Establishing a culture of brainstorming where you invite all interested parties to contribute
- Discussing ideas out loud so that people can add their ideas, views, opinions to them

- Being open minded and not limiting your ideas, even if the idea who have seems ridiculous
- Not discarding ideas that you don't work on immediately, but instead making a note of them and shelving them so they can be revisited at a later date.

Tips

- Keep in mind that good ideas do not always have to be unique.
- Remember that timing plays a huge role in determining the success of your idea.
- Situations and circumstances will always change, so be flexible and adapt your idea accordingly.

8.6.2 Business Entity Concepts: Basic Business Terminology

If your aim is to start and run a business, it is crucial that you have a good understanding of basic business terms. Every entrepreneur should be well versed in the following terms:

- **Accounting:** A systematic method of recording and reporting financial transactions.
- **Accounts payable:** Money owed by a company to its creditors.
- **Accounts Receivable:** The amount a company is owed by its clients.
- **Assets:** The value of everything a company owns and uses to conduct its business.
- **Balance Sheet:** A snapshot of a company's assets, liabilities and owner's equity at a given moment.
- **Bottom Line:** The total amount a business has earned or lost at the end of a month.
- **Business:** An organization that operates with the aim of making a profit.
- **Business to Business (B2B):** A business that sells goods or services to another business.
- **Business to Consumer (B2C):** A business that sells goods or services directly to the end user.
- **Capital:** The money a business has in its accounts, assets and investments. The two main types of capital are debt and equity.
- **Cash Flow:** The overall movement of funds through a business each month, including income and expenses.
- **Cash Flow Statement:** A statement showing the money that entered and exited a business during a specific period of time.
- **Contract:** A formal agreement to do work for pay.
- **Depreciation:** The degrading value of an asset over time.
- **Expense:** The costs that a business incurs through its operations.
- **Finance:** The management and allocation of money and other assets.
- **Financial Report:** A comprehensive account of a business' transactions and expenses.
- **Fixed Cost:** A one-time expense.

- **Income Statement (Profit and Loss Statement):** Shows the profitability of a business during a period of time.
- **Liabilities:** The value of what a business owes to someone else.
- **Marketing:** The process of promoting, selling and distributing a product or service.
- **Net Income/Profit:** Revenues minus expenses.
- **Net Worth:** The total value of a business.
- **Payback Period:** The amount of time it takes to recover the initial investment of a business.
- **Profit Margin:** The ratio of profit, divided by revenue, displayed as a percentage.
- **Return on Investment (ROI):** The amount of money a business gets as return from an investment.
- **Revenue:** The total amount of income before expenses are subtracted.
- **Sales Prospect:** A potential customer.
- **Supplier:** A provider of supplies to a business.
- **Target Market:** A specific group of customers at which a company's products and services are aimed.
- **Valuation:** An estimate of the overall worth of the business.
- **Variable Cost:** Expenses that change in proportion to the activity of a business.
- **Working Capital:** Calculated as current assets minus current liabilities.

8.6.3 CRM & Networking

What is CRM?

CRM stands for Customer Relationship Management. Originally the expression Customer Relationship Management meant managing one's relationship with customers. However, today it refers to IT systems and software designed to help companies manage their relationships.

The Need for CRM

The better a company can manage its relationships with its customers, the higher the chances of the company's success. For any entrepreneur, the ability to successfully retain existing customers and expand the enterprise is paramount. This is why IT systems that focus on addressing the problems of dealing with customers on a daily basis are becoming more and more in demand.

Customer needs change over time, and technology can make it easier to understand what customers really want. This insight helps companies to be more responsive to the needs of their customers. It enables them to modify their business operations when required, so that their customers are always served in the best manner possible. Simply put, CRM helps companies recognize the value of their clients and enables them to capitalize on improved customer relations.

Benefits of CRM

CRM has a number of important benefits:

- It helps improve relations with existing customers which can lead to:
 - Increased sales
 - Identification of customer needs
 - Cross-selling of products
- It results in better marketing of one's products or services
- It results in better marketing of one's products or services
- It enhances customer satisfaction and retention
- It improves profitability by identifying and focusing on the most profitable customers

8.6.3.1 What is Networking?

In business, networking means leveraging your business and personal connections in order to bring in a regular supply of new business. This marketing method is effective as well as low cost. It is a great way to develop sales opportunities and contacts. Networking can be based on referrals and introductions, or can take place via phone, email, and social and business networking websites.

The Need for Networking

Networking is an essential personal skill for business people, but it is even more important for entrepreneurs. The process of networking has its roots in relationship building. Networking results in greater communication and a stronger presence in the entrepreneurial ecosystem. This helps build strong relationships with other entrepreneurs.

Business networking events held across the globe play a huge role in connecting like-minded entrepreneurs who share the same fundamental beliefs in communication, exchanging ideas and converting ideas into realities. Such networking events also play a crucial role in connecting entrepreneurs with potential investors. Entrepreneurs may have vastly different experiences and backgrounds but they all have a common goal in mind – they all seek connection, inspiration, advice, opportunities and mentors. Networking offers them a platform to do just that.

Benefits of Networking

Networking offers numerous benefits for entrepreneurs. Some of the major benefits are:

- Getting high quality leads
- Increased business opportunities
- Good source of relevant connections
- Advice from like-minded entrepreneurs
- Gaining visibility and raising your profile
- Meeting positive and enthusiastic people

- Increased self-confidence
- Satisfaction from helping others
- Building strong and lasting friendships

Tips

- Use social media interactions to identify needs and gather feedback.
- When networking, ask open-ended questions rather than yes/no type questions.

8.6.4 Business Plan: Why Set Goals?

Setting goals is important because it gives you long-term vision and short-term motivation. Goals can be short term, medium term and long term.

Short-Term Goals

- These are specific goals for the immediate future.

Example: Repairing a machine that has failed.

Medium-Term Goals

- These goals are built on your short-term goals.
- They do not need to be as specific as your short-term goals.

Example: Arranging for a service contract to ensure that your machines don't fail again.

Long-Term Goals

These goals require time and planning.

They usually take a year or more to achieve.

Example: Planning your expenses so you can buy new machinery

Why Create a Business Plan?

A business plan is a tool for understanding how your business is put together. It can be used to monitor progress, foster accountable and control the fate of the business. It usually offers a 3-5year projection and outlines the plan that the company intends to follow to grow its revenues. A business plan is also a very important tool for getting the interest of key employees or future investors.

A business plan typically comprises of eight elements.

8.6.4.1 Elements of a Business Plan

Executive Summary

The executive summary follows the title page. The summary should clearly state your desires as the business owner in a short and business like way. It is an overview of your business and your plans. Ideally this should not be more than 1-2 pages.

Your Executive Summary should include:

- **The Mission Statement:** Explain what your business is all about.

Example: Nike's Mission Statement

Nike's mission statement is "To bring inspiration and innovation to every athlete in the world."

- **Company Information:** Provide information like when your business was formed, the names and roles of the founders, the number of employees, your business location(s) etc.
- **Growth Highlights:** Mention examples of company growth. Use graphs and charts where possible.
- **Your Products/Services:** Describe the products or services provided.
- **Financial Information:** Provide details on current bank and investors.
- **Summarize future plans:** Describe where you see your business in the future.

Business Description

The second section of your business plan needs to provide a detailed review of the different elements of your business. This will help potential investors to correctly understand your business goal and the uniqueness of your offering.

Your Business Description should include:

- A description of the nature of your business
- The market needs that you are aiming to satisfy
- The ways in which your products and services meet these needs
- The specific consumers and organizations that you intend to serve
- Your specific competitive advantages

Market Analysis

The market analysis section usually follows the business description. The aim of this section is to showcase your industry and market knowledge. This is also the section where you should lay down your research findings and conclusions.

Your Market Analysis should include:

- Your industry description and outlook
- Information on your target market
- The needs and demographics of your target audience
- The size of your target market

- The amount of market share you want to capture
- Your pricing structure
- Your competitive analysis
- Any regulatory requirements

Organization & Management

This section should come immediately after the Market Analysis. Your Organization & Management section should include:

- Your company's organizational structure
- Details of your company's ownership
- Details of your management team
- Qualifications of your board of directors
- Detailed descriptions of each division/department and its function
- The salary and benefits package that you offer your people

Service or Product Line

The next section is the service or product line section. This is where you describe your service or product, and stress on their benefits to potential and current customers. Explain in detail why your product of choice will fulfil the needs of your target audience.

Your Service or Product Line section should include:

- A description of your product/service
- A description of your product or service's life cycle
- A list of any copyright or patent filings
- A description of any R&D activities that you are involved in or planning

Marketing & Sales

Once the Service or Product Line section of your plan has been completed, you should start on the description of the marketing and sales management strategy for your business.

Your Marketing section should include the following strategies:

- **Market penetration strategy:** This strategy focuses on selling your existing products or services in existing markets, in order to increase your market share.
- **Growth strategy:** This strategy focuses on increasing the amount of market share, even if it reduces earnings in the short-term.
- **Channels of distribution strategy:** These can be wholesalers, retailers, distributors and even the internet.
- **Communication strategy:** These can be written strategies (e-mail, text, chat), oral strategies (phone calls, video chats, face-to-face conversations), non-verbal strategies (body language, facial expressions, tone of voice) and visual strategies (signs, webpages, illustrations).

Your Sales section should include the following information:

- **A salesforce strategy:** This strategy focuses on increasing the revenue of the enterprise.
- **A breakdown of your sales activities:** This means detailing out how you intend to sell your products or services – will you sell it offline or online, how many units do you intend to sell, what price do you plan to sell each unit at, etc.

Funding Request

This section is specifically for those who require funding for their venture. The Funding Request section should include the following information:

- How much funding you currently require.
- How much funding you will require over the next five years. This will depend on your long-term goals.
- The type of funding you want and how you plan to use it. Do you want funding that can be used only for a specific purpose, or funding that can be used for any kind of requirement?
- Strategic plans for the future. This will involve detailing out your long-term plans – what these plans are and how much money you will require to put these plans in motions.
- Historical and prospective financial information. This can be done by creating and maintaining all your financial records, right from the moment your enterprise started, to the present day. Documents required for this are your balance sheet which contains details of your company's assets and liabilities, your income statement which lists your company's revenues, expenses and net income for the year, your tax returns (usually for the last three years) and your cash flow budget which lists the cash that came in, the cash that went out and states whether you had a cash deficit (negative balance) or surplus (positive balance) at the end of each month.

Financial Planning

Before you begin building your enterprise, you need to plan your finances. Take a look at the steps for financial planning:

- **Step 1:** Create a financial plan. This should include your goals, strategies and timelines for accomplishing these goals.
- **Step 2:** Organize all your important financial documents. Maintain a file to hold your investment details, bank statements, tax papers, credit card bills, insurance papers and any other financial records.
- **Step 3:** Calculate your net worth. This means figure out what you own (assets like your house, bank accounts, investments etc.), and then subtract what you owe (liabilities like loans, pending credit card amounts etc.) the amount you are left with is your net worth.
- **Step 4:** Make a spending plan. This means write down in detail where your money will come from, and where it will go.
- **Step 5:** Build an emergency fund. A good emergency fund contains enough money to cover at least 6 months' worth of expenses.
- **Step 6:** Set up your insurance. Insurance provides long term financial security and protects you against risk.

Risk Management

As an entrepreneur, it is critical that you evaluate the risks involved with the type of enterprise that you want to start, before you begin setting up your company. Once you have identified potential risks, you can take steps to reduce them. Some ways to manage risks are:

- Research similar business and find out about their risks and how they were minimized.
- Evaluate current market trends and find out if similar products or services that launched a while ago are still being well received by the public.
- Think about whether you really have the required expertise to launch your product or service.
- Examine your finances and see if you have enough income to start your enterprise.
- Be aware of the current state of the economy, consider how the economy may change over time, and think about how your enterprise will be affected by any of those changes.
- Create a detailed business plan.

Tips



- Ensure all the important elements are covered in your plan.
- Scrutinize the numbers thoroughly.
- Be concise and realistic.
- Be conservative in your approach and your projections.
- Use visuals like charts, graphs and images wherever possible.

8.6.5 Procedure and Formalities for Bank Finance

The Need for Bank Finance

For entrepreneurs, one of the most difficult challenges faced involves securing funds for start-ups. With numerous funding options available, entrepreneurs need to take a close look at which funding methodology works best for them. In India, banks are one of the largest funders of start-ups, offering funding to thousands of start-ups every year.

8.6.5.1 What Information Should Entrepreneurs Offer Banks for Funding?

When approaching a bank, entrepreneurs must have a clear idea of the different criteria that banks use to screen, rate and process loan applications. Entrepreneurs must also be aware of the importance of providing banks with accurate and correct information. It is now easier than ever for financial institutions to track any default behaviour of loan applicants. Entrepreneurs looking for funding from banks must provide banks with information relating to their general credentials, financial situation and guarantees or collaterals that can be offered.

General Credentials

This is where you, as an entrepreneur, provide the bank with background information on yourself. Such information includes:

- **Letter(s) of Introduction:** This letter should be written by a respected business person who knows you well enough to introduce you. The aim of this letter is set across your achievements and vouch for your character and integrity.
- **Your Profile:** This is basically your resume. You need to give the bank a good idea of your educational achievements, professional training, qualifications, employment record and achievements.
- **Business Brochure:** A business brochure typically provides information on company products, clients, how long the business has been running for etc.
- **Bank and Other References:** If you have an account with another bank, providing those bank references is a good idea.
- **Proof of Company Ownership or Registration:** In some cases, you may need to provide the bank with proof of company ownership and registration. A list of assets and liabilities may also be required.

Financial Situation

Banks will expect current financial information on your enterprise. The standard financial reports you should be prepared with are:

- Balance Sheet
- Cash-Flow Statement
- Business Plan
- Profit-and-Loss Account
- Projected Sales and Revenues
- Feasibility Study

Guarantees or Collaterals

Usually banks will refuse to grant you a loan without security. You can offer assets which the bank can seize and sell off if you do not repay the loan. Fixed assets like machinery, equipment, vehicles etc. are also considered to be security for loans.

8.6.5.2 The Lending Criteria of Banks

Your request for funding will have a higher chance of success if you can satisfy the following lending criteria:

- Good cash flow
- Adequate shareholders' funds
- Adequate security
- Experience in business
- Good reputation

The Procedure

To apply for funding the following procedure will need to be followed.

- Submit your application form and all other required documents to the bank.
- The bank will carefully assess your credit worthiness and assign ratings by analysing your business information with respect to parameters like management, financial, operational and industry information as well as past loan performance.
- The bank will make a decision as to whether or not you should be given funding.

Tips



- Get advice on funding options from experienced bankers.
- Be cautious and avoid borrowing more than you need, for longer than you need, at an interest rate that is higher than you are comfortable with.

8.6.6 Enterprise Management - An Overview

To manage your enterprise effectively you need to look at many different aspects, right from managing the day-to-day activities to figuring out how to handle a large-scale event. Let's take a look at some simple steps to manage your company effectively.

Step 1: Use your leadership skills and ask for advice when required.

Let's take the example of Ramu, an entrepreneur who has recently started his own enterprise. Ramu has good leadership skills – he is honest, communicates well, knows how to delegate work etc. These leadership skills definitely help Ramu in the management of his enterprise. However, sometimes Ramu comes across situations that he is unsure how to handle. What should Ramu do in this case? One solution is for him to find a more experienced manager who is willing to mentor him. Another solution is for Ramu to use his networking skills so that he can connect with managers from other organizations, who can give him advice on how to handle such situations.

Step 2: Divide your work amongst others – realize that you cannot handle everything yourself.

Even the most skilled manager in the world will not be able to manage every single task that an enterprise will demand of him. A smart manager needs to realize that the key to managing his enterprise lies in his dividing all his work between those around him. This is known as delegation. However, delegating is not enough. A manager must delegate effectively if he wants to see results. This is important because delegating, when done incorrectly, can result in you creating even more work for yourself. To delegate effectively, you can start by making two lists. One list should contain the things that you know you need to handle yourself. The second list should contain the things that you are confident can be given to others to manage and handle.

Besides incorrect delegation, another issue that may arise is over-delegation. This means giving away too many of your tasks to others. The problem with this is, the more tasks you delegate, the more time you will spend tracking and monitoring the work progress of those you have handed the tasks to. This will leave you with very little time to finish your own work.

Step 3: Hire the right people for the job.

Hiring the right people goes a long way towards effectively managing your enterprise. To hire the best people suited for the job, you need to be very careful with your interview process. You should ask potential candidates the right questions and evaluate their answers carefully. Carrying out background checks is always a good practice. Running a credit check is also a good idea, especially if the people you are planning to hire will be handling your money. Create a detailed job description for each role that you want filled and ensure that all candidates have a clear and correct understanding of the job description. You should also have an employee manual in place, where you put down every expectation that you have from your employees. All these actions will help ensure that the right people are approached for running your enterprise.

Step 4: Motivate your employees and train them well.

Your enterprise can only be managed effectively if your employees are motivated to work hard for your enterprise. Part of being motivated involves your employees believing in the vision and mission of your enterprise and genuinely wanting to make efforts towards pursuing the same. You can motivate your employees with recognition, bonuses and rewards for achievements. You can also motivate them by telling them about how their efforts have led to the company's success. This will help them feel pride and give them a sense of responsibility that will increase their motivation. Besides motivating your people, your employees should be constantly trained in new practices and technologies. Remember, training is not a one-time effort. It is a consistent effort that needs to be carried out regularly.

Step 5: Train your people to handle your customers well.

Your employees need to be well-versed in the art of customer management. This means they should be able to understand what their customers want, and also know how to satisfy their needs. For them to truly understand this, they need to see how you deal effectively with customers.

This is called leading by example. Show them how you sincerely listen to your clients and the efforts that you put into understand their requirements. Let them listen to the type of questions that you ask your clients so they understand which questions are appropriate.

Step 6: Market your enterprise effectively.

Also, hire a marketing agency if you feel you need help in this area. Now that you know what is required to run your enterprise effectively, put these steps into play, and see how much easier managing your enterprise becomes!

Tips

- Get advice on funding options from experienced bankers.
- Be cautious and avoid borrowing more than you need, for longer than you need, at an interest rate that is higher than you are comfortable with.

8.6.7 Considering Entrepreneurship

Questions to ask yourself before considering entrepreneurship.

1. Why am I starting a business?
2. What problem am I solving?
3. Have others attempted to solve this problem before? Did they succeed or fail?
4. Do I have a mentor¹ or industry expert that I can call on?
5. Who is my ideal customer²?
6. Who are my competitors³?
7. What makes my business idea different from other business ideas?
8. What are the key features of my product or service?
9. Have I done a SWOT⁴ analysis?
10. What is the size of the market that will buy my product or service?
11. What would it take to build a minimum viable product⁵ to test the market?
12. How much money do I need to get started?
13. Will I need to get a loan?
14. How soon will my products or services be available?
15. When will I break even⁶ or make a profit?
16. How will those who invest in my idea make a profit?
17. How should I set up the legal structure⁷ of my business?
18. What taxes⁸ will I need to pay?
19. What kind of insurance⁹ will I need?
20. Have I reached out to potential customers for feedback

Tips

- It is very important to validate your business ideas before you invest significant time, money and resources into it.
- The more questions you ask yourself, the more prepared you will be to handle the highs and lows of starting an enterprise.

Footnotes:

1. A mentor is a trusted and experienced person who is willing to coach and guide you.
2. A customer is someone who buys goods and/or services.
3. A competitor is a person or company that sells products and/or services similar to your products and/or services.
4. SWOT stands for Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities and Threats. To conduct a SWOT analysis of your company, you need to list down all the strengths and weaknesses of your company, the opportunities that are present for your company and the threats faced by your company.
5. A minimum viable product is a product that has the fewest possible features, that can be sold to customers, for the purpose of getting feedback from customers on the product.
6. A company is said to break even when the profits of the company are equal to the costs.
7. The legal structure could be a sole proprietorship, partnership or limited liability partnership.
8. There are two types of taxes – direct taxes payable by a person or a company, or indirect taxes charged on goods and/or services.
9. There are two types of insurance – life insurance and general insurance. Life insurance covers human life while general insurance covers assets like animals, goods, cars etc.

- Notes

